

АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

как второй иностранный

4-й год обучения



О. В. Афанасьева, И. В. Михеева



АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

как второй иностранный

4-й год обучения

Учебник

Рекомендовано Министерством просвещения Российской Федерации

7-е издание, исправленное



№ООФФ

Москва



Step One

Do It Together

Listen to this traditional English song and sing along, 🚳 (1).

One Man Went to Moor

- 1. One man went to moor², Went to moor on meadow3. One man and his dog, One man and his dog Went to moor on meadow.
- 2. Two men went to moor, Went to moor on meadow. Two men, one man, One man and his dog Went to moor on meadow.
- 3. Three men went to moor, Went to moor on meadow. Three men, two men, One man and his dog Went to moor on meadow.

¹ (the) USA [,ju: es 'eɪ] = the United States of America — Соединённые Штаты Америки

² а moor [muə] — вересковая пустошь

³ a meadow ['medəu] — луг

Went to moor on meadow. Eight men, seven men, six men, five men, four men, three men, two men, One man and his dog went to moor on meadow. 9. Nine men went to moor, Went to moor on meadow. Nine men, eight men, seven men, six men, five men, four men, three men, two men, One man and his dog went to moor on meadow. 10. Ten men went to moor. Went to moor on meadow. Ten men, nine men, eight men, seven men, six men, five men, four men, three men, two men, One man and his dog went to moor on meadow. 2 Complete the tag questions¹ and answer them. Example: You travelled a lot during your summer holidays, ...? — You travelled a lot during your summer holidays, didn't you? Yes, I did. (No, I didn't. I stayed at home.) 1 a tag question = a disjunctive question — разделительный вопрос

One man and his dog went to moor on meadow.

One man and his dog went to moor on meadow.

Six men, five men, four men, three men, two men, One man and his dog went to moor on meadow.

Seven men, six men, five men, four men, three men,

One man and his dog went to moor on meadow.

two men,

Five men, four men, three men, two men,

4. Four men went to moor,
Went to moor on meadow.
Four men, three men, two men,

5. Five men went to moor, Went to moor on meadow.

6. Six men went to moor,

7. Seven men went to moor, Went to moor on meadow.

8. Eight men went to moor,

Went to moor on meadow.

4

1) You didn't go anywhere, ...? 2) You stayed in your home town, ...? 3) The weather was terrible in the summer, ...? 4) It never rained in the summer, ...? 5) You often went boating, ...? 6) Nobody went with you, ...? 7) You didn't make sandcastles on the beach, ...? 8) You had a lot of fun, ...? 9) You couldn't go abroad, ...? 10) Your parents were with you during the summer, ...? 11) You weren't in the north of our country, ...? 12) You didn't go to the forest much, ...? 13) You saw a lot of interesting places, ...? 14) You didn't write a diary, ...? 15) You didnt invite anybody to visit you, ...? 3 You have just come back to school. Tell your friends a few words about your summer holidays. Follow the plan. A. If you travelled · Who did you travel with? · How long did you stay there? · What did you do in the morning and in the afternoon? · Where did you go in the evening? · Did you have fun? · What are the places you visited famous for? · Where are they situated? · What souvenirs did you buy? · Were your holidays interesting? Boring? B. If you stayed in your home town · When did you usually get up? · What did you do in the morning? · Did you go to the forest (river, mountains)? · Who did you go there with? · What did you do about the house? · How much did you read? · What games¹ did you play? Who did you do it with? Did you ride a bike?

1 a game [geim] — игра

5

0

Step

· What did you do in the evening? · Did you write a diary? · What films did you see? · What museums did you visit? · Who came to your place? · Were your holidays interesting? Boring? 6 4 Listen, (2), and choose the right item¹. 口() Dialogue A 1) John went to the USA with b) his family c) his friends a) Yura 2) People call² New York a) "the Big Apple" b) "the Little Apple" c) "the Apple" 3) Yura would like to see New York's c) skyscrapers3 a) streets b) bridges 4) John's going to Washington, D.C. c) on Monday a) at the weekend b) on Friday 5) John is going to send Yura a a) letter b) telegram c) postcard Dialogue B 1) John ... it in New York. c) doesn't like a) likes b) hates 2) New Yorkers are b) kind c) friendly a) selfish 3) It's raining in a) Moscow b) New York c) Washington, D.C. 4) Yesterday's show was a) not good b) rather good c) very good 5) John'll ... from Washington, D.C. a) write b) go away c) call ¹ an item ['aitəm] — пункт; 3∂ .: вариант ² to call [kɔ:l] — называть ³ a skyscraper [ˈskaɪˌskreɪpə] — небоскрёб

Dialogue C

- 1) In Washington, D.C. John is staying c) in an old castle a) at a hotel b) with friends
- 2) John is going to see Washington
- a) in the morning b) in the afternoon c) in the evening
- 3) John and Sally are going to see
- a) the White House and the Cathedral
- b) the White House and the Potomac [pəˈtəumæk] River
 - c) the White House and the Capitol
- 4) Yura and Sally are going to the city centre with
 - a) their mother b) their father c) their cousins
- 5) Yura is going to get some of John's c) photos a) CDs b) e-mails
- 5 John Barker and his family visited the USA in the summer. He knows a lot about America now. How much do you know about it? Say: true or false.







7

0

Step

- 1) New York is the capital of the USA.
- 2) Russians came to America in the 18th century.
- 3) America is a country of immigrants.
- 4) Chicago [[rka:gou] is situated in the south of the USA.
- 5) There are fifty states in the USA.
- 6) There are fifty stars on the American flag.
- 7) All American states are situated in South America.
- 8) The United States is smaller than Russia.
- 9) The Mississippi is the longest river in the world. 10) There are no high mountains in the USA.
- 11) California is a US city.
- 12) Texas ['teksəs] is the biggest state of the USA.

¹ a state [steit] — штат





continent ['kontinent]: Africa is a continent. South America and North America are continents too.

Europe ['joərəp]: Italy, Finland, Spain are situated in Europe.

Asia [ˈeɪʃə]: Russia is situated in Europe and Asia.

Australia [p'streiliə]: Australia is a country and a continent.

nationality [næʃəˈnælɪti]: I am Russian. It is my nationality. John is English. It is his nationality.

historic [hɪˈstɒrɪk]: Red Square is a historic place. Germany [ˈʤɜːməni]: Germany is situated in Europe.

Ireland ['aɪələnd]: Ireland is to the west of Great Britain.

7 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words. Listen, 🚳 (4), and repeat.

bring [brin] — приносить, приводить build [bild] — строить moon [mu:n] — луна

only ['əunli] — 1) *adv* только; 2) *adj* единственный **proud** [praud] — гордый skyscraper [ˈskaɪˌskreɪpə] — небоскрёб

state [steit] — 1) штат; 2) государство remember [ri'membə] — пом-

нить
same [seim] — такой же
wild [waild] — дикий

 \boldsymbol{B} .

bring (brought [bro:t]): John brought me a cup of tea. Summer brings warmer weather. We are going to have a party, come and bring your friends. Bring back my book, please.

(d)

| | build (built [bilt]): What is grandpa building? When did they build the new road near your farm? — They built it last year. | | | | |
|---|--|--|-----|--|--|
| | building: Houses, schools, shops, hotels are buildings. | | | | |
| | the moon: the sun and the moon, on the moon. Can you see the | | | | |
| | moon in the sky? | | | | |
| | only: 1) Only Fred can help me. I know only one foreign lan- | | | | |
| | guage. 2) an only child, an only friend. Benny is an only child in | | | | |
| | the family. | | 9 | | |
| | 0.75V | an, a proud woman, proud people. He was too | | | |
| | | o his parents' home. | n e | | |
| | | is proud of her parents. Alex says he is proud | 0 | | |
| | of his job. | and state of the s | ٥ | | |
| | Control of the contro | rapers are very high buildings. There are many | Ste | | |
| | skyscrapers in New York. | | | | |
| | | ny states are there in the USA? Which is the | | | |
| | | rance is a state in Europe. | | | |
| | remember: I never remember when she was born. Do you remem- | | | | |
| | ber her address? Did you remember to buy bread? | | | | |
| | same: the same clothes, the same answer. It's the same old story, | | | | |
| | I don't want to hear it again. | | | | |
| | at the same time: 1) I can't understand what you are saying if | | | | |
| | you all talk at the same time. 2) Moscow is a very old city. At the | | | | |
| | same time it is young and modern. | | | | |
| | wild: a wild animal, a wild flower. What wild animals do you | | | | |
| | know? | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| 3 | Match the words in th | ne two columns. | | | |
| | 1 | en stad til kinn det med er storet det skelle ette skelletet. De | | | |
| | 1) to be proud of | a) the moon | | | |
| | 2) to build | b) the country | | | |
| | 3) to bring | c) the question | | | |
| | 4) to walk on | d) a bridge | | | |
| | 5) to remember | e) a cup of tea | | | |
| | DSSA | | | | |
| 9 | Complete the sentence | ces. Use the words from the box. | | | |
| | high historia ar | alse proceed games wild | | | |
| | high, historic, only, proud, same, wild | | | | |
| | 1) Don hoo no bustl | have an distance in the family. He is an shild | | | |
| | | hers or sisters in the family. He is an child. | | | |
| | | s of her children. They are so talented. | | | |
| | 3) There are so many buildings in New York. | | | | |

P

- 5) The Kremlin is a ... place in Moscow.
- 6) You can see a lot of ... animals in the zoo.
- 7) We can buy this computer I think. The ... problem is we haven't got so much money.
- 8) We are staying at the ... hotel as you.
- 9) It's the ... film that they showed last year.
- 10) Have you got any ... flowers in your garden?
- 11) Are there many ... monuments in St Petersburg?
- 10 A. Read the text and match the titles with the paragraphs. There is one extra title.
 - 1. Country of Immigrants

- 2. New Home for English-Speaking People
- 3. The Old and the New Hand-in-Hand
- 4. American Traditions

The New World

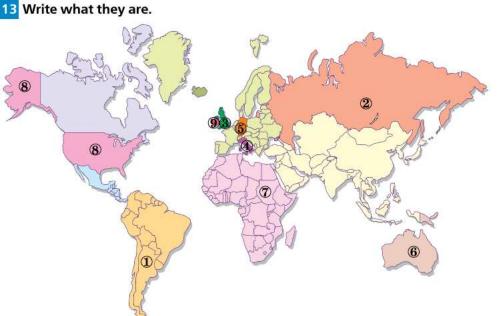
- a) The United States is a young country. It is only a few hundred years old. Millions of people from other countries and continents Europe, Asia, Africa, Australia and South America find their new home in the United States.
- b) The people of the United States are of many different nationalities. These different people brought to the new home their traditions, holidays and festivals. From Germany they brought Christmas trees. From Ireland they brought St Patrick's Day celebrations. From Scotland they brought Halloween. Americans celebrate the festivals of the Old World. But there are new American festivals and traditions too.
- c) Americans like new ideas. They built the first skyscrapers and they put the first man on the Moon. They like to be modern. They enjoy big modern cities, new houses and new cars. At the same time Americans love old things. They like to visit historic houses and museums. They remember their country's history and the days of the "Wild West". Most of them are very proud of their country and love it.
- B. Listen, (5), and read the text again after it.

⁽d))

- What is the New World?
 Why is the USA a country of immigrants?
 What continents do immigrants come to the USA from?
 What do immigrants bring with them?
 Do Americans celebrate only new holidays and festivals?
 Who put the first man on the Moon?
 Are many Americans patriots? Why do you think so?
- 12 Speak about the people of the USA. Use exercises 10 and 11.

Do It on Your Own

11 Answer the questions.



14 Write the English for:

историческое здание, пятьдесят штатов, вернуть тетрадь, построить мост, высокие небоскрёбы, полевые цветы, мой единственный друг, тот же ответ, гордиться этой страной, луна и звёзды, помнить российскую историю, самое большое государство. 11

) n e

Step O

Step Two

12

-

Unit

Do It Together

- 1 A. Listen to the text "The Big Apple", 🕢 (6), and say which of the sentences are true.
 - 1. a) All jazz musicians wanted to work in Washington, D.C. b) All jazz musicians wanted to work in New York.
 - 2. a) They called New York "The Big Apple" because it was the best city to work in. b) They called New York "The Big Apple" because it was the biggest city in the USA.
 - 3. a) More than twelve million people come to visit New York every year. b) More than twenty million people come to visit New York
 - 4. a) The name of New York's park is Central Park. b) The name of New York's park is Quiet Park.
 - 5. a) New York has no beaches. b) New York has a lot of beaches.
 - 6. a) Broadway is famous for its shows.
 - b) Broadway is famous because it's five kilometres long.

B. Say what information about New York the text gives. What else do you

know about this city?

- 2 Match the items in the columns.
- 1) Texas

every year.

- 2) California 3) The Potomac
- River
- 4) Europe
- 5) New York
- 7) Australia
- 8) The Mississippi

6) Washington, D.C.

- a) The continent where Italy, Spain, France and Germany are situated.
 - b) The capital of the USA. c) The American state where Hollywood is situated.
 - d) One of the biggest states in the USA in the south of the country. e) The name of the continent and at the
 - same time of the country. f) The country which has got fifty states.
 - g) The city people call "the Big Apple".
- h) The longest river of the USA. 9) The USA i) The river which Washington, D.C. is situated on. 10) The New World j) North, Central and South America.

SI)



| | 4) I remember the m 5) I remember the ti 6) I remember the bo | me when | | | | |
|-------------|---|--|---|--|--|--|
| | B. 1) I am proud of 2) My parents are proud of 3) My friend is proud | oud of | 4) My teacher is proud of5) We are proud of | | | |
| 4 | Answer the questions. | | | | | |
| | 4) Which American5) What do people useChicago?6) What names of A | s the USA situationalities live cities can you sually call the temperature cities and Washington ans proud of? id they bring fundid they b | ated on? e in the States, don't they? see a lot of tall buildings in? tall buildings of New York and and states do you remember? a, D.C. the same place (thing)? rom Germany? ng from Scotland? | | | |
| 5 | 5 Say what they built in the city of Norton and when. | | | | | |
| | Example: They built a | a bridge in the city | y of Norton in 1840 (eighteen forty). | | | |
| W. T. T. T. | 1840 | SHOP 2000 | SWIMMING BATH | | | |
| | 1040 | 2000 | 1978 | | | |

Complete these sentences.

I remember the day when
 I remember the place where
 I remember the song which

















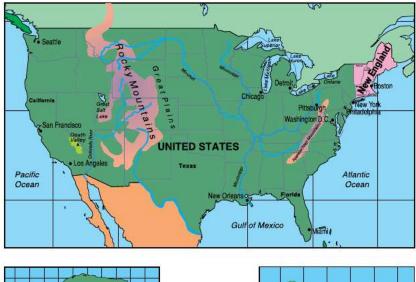








×







- 1) the United States of America
- 2) Canada [ˈkænədə]
- 3) Mexico ['meksikəu]
- 4) the Pacific Ocean [pəˌsɪfɪk ˈəuʃn] (the Pacific)
- 5) the Atlantic Ocean [ətˌlæntɪk ˈəuʃn] (the Atlantic)
- 6) Alaska [əˈlæskə]
- 7) Hawaii [həˈwaɪi]
- 8) the Rocky Mountains [roki mauntinz]
- 9) the Appalachian [ˌæpəˈleɪtʃiən] Mountains (the Appalachians)
- 10) the Grand Canyon [grænd kænjən]
- 11) the Great Plains
- 12) Death Valley [ˌdeθ ˈvæli]
- 13) the Mississippi River (the Mississippi)
- 14) the Colorado [ˌkɒləˈraːdəu] River (the Colorado)
- 15) the Great Lakes

| | 7 Say what they are. | | | | |
|----------------|---|--|--|--|--|
| | Example: California is a state. | | | | |
| 16 | the Pacific Canada the Appalachians Mexico the Mississippi the Ontario | 7) the Colorado 8) Alaska 9) Hawaii 10) the Atlantic 11) the USA 12) the Huron | | | |
| Unit | 8 Learn how to pronounce and use the n | ew words. Listen, ╉ (8), and repeat. | | | |
| Ď | A. | | | | |
| | border (on) ['bɔ:də] — граничить (c) chain [tʃeɪn] — цепь coast [kəʊst] — побережье deep [di:p] — глубокий flow [fləʊ] — течь island ['aɪlənd] — остров large [la:ʤ] — большой | lie [lai] — лежать mighty ['maiti] — могущест- венный, могучий part [pa:t] — часть plain [plein] — равнина stretch [stretf] — тянуться, простираться valley ['væli] — долина | | | |
| | В. | | | | |
| | border: to border on sth. What countries does Russia border on? The USA borders on Canada in the north. chain: a golden chain, a chain of mountains. That day Anne had a beautiful chain round her neck. The Urals are a chain of mountains situated in Europe and Asia. coast: the Atlantic coast, on the coast. My town is situated on the coast. deep: a deep river, a deep lake. My younger brother is afraid to | | | | |
| | swim in deep water. How deep is this canyon? flow: to flow west, to flow north, to flow into the ocean. The Volga flows into the Caspian Sea. The Colorado flows south. island: an island in the ocean, a chain of islands. What islands are situated to the east of Russia? I can take you to the island in a boat. large: a large city, a large family. We stayed in a large hotel on the sea coast. lie (lay [lei]): to lie on the sofa, to lie on the river. He lay down on | | | | |
| the sea coast. | | | | | |

TWO

Great Britain has four parts, or four countries. This is the most beautiful part of the garden.

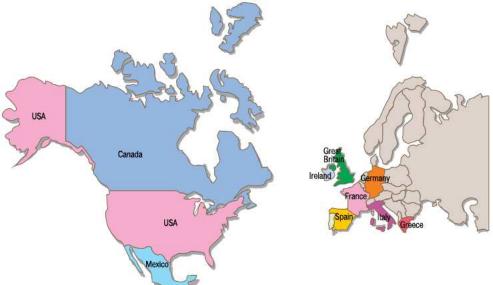
valley: a green valley, a deep valley, lily of the valley (lilies of the valley). There is a river flowing in the valley. Valleys are usually

mighty: a mighty river, a mighty king. The Mississippi is a mighty river in the US. We hope that Russia will always be a

part: a part of the country, four large parts, part of the time.

plain: a low plain, the Great Plains of the US. The Great Plains are situated in the western central part of the country. stretch: to stretch far, to stretch west, to stretch north. The forest stretched as far as the eye could see. Russia stretches from the Pacific Ocean to the Baltic Sea.

9 A. Look at the map and say what countries: a) the USA, b) Canada borders on.



B. Answer the questions.

mighty country.

situated in the mountains.

- 1) Germany borders on France, doesn't it?
- 2) France borders on Spain, doesn't it?
- 3) Spain doesn't border on Italy, does it? 4) Germany borders on Greece, doesn't it? 5) Greece doesn't border on Italy, does it?

- C. Say: 1) what country Russia borders on in the north-west 2) what country Great Britain borders on in the west 3) what country Spain borders on in the north 4) what country Germany borders on in the south-west 5) what country the USA borders on in the south 10 Use the new words from the box and complete the sentences. chain, islands, lies, large, largest, flows, parts, stretching, lily of the valley, deep, deepest, coast, plains 1) The ... is a beautiful spring flower. 2) There are a lot of ... in the Pacific Ocean. 3) The Baikal is the ... lake in the world. 4) Masha spent her holidays on the Black Sea 5) Moscow is a very ... city. 6) The Mississippi is a ... river, it is the ... river in the USA. 7) The Mississippi ... south. 8) The Urals is a famous ... of mountains. 9) Is the Volga a ... river? 10) There are four ... in Great Britain. They are England, Wales, Scotland and
 - ton, D.C. ... on the Potomac River. 13) The forest was ... to the east.

- 11 Match them.
 - 1) The Great Lakes
 - 2) Texas 3) The Colorado
 - 4) Washington
 - 5) Washington, D.C.
 - 6) Florida
 - 7) The Appalachians
 - 8) The Rocky Mountains

a) stretch in the east

Northern Ireland. 11) Are there any ... in Europe? 12) Washing-

- b) lie in the north of the USA c) borders on Mexico in the south like
- Arizona and New Mexico
- d) is the capital of the USA e) stretch along¹ the coast
- - f) is a state in the north-west g) flows south
- h) lies in the south of the USA

¹ along [əˈlɒŋ] — вдоль

В английском языке есть два похожих слова other и another, которые следует различать.

Another означает 1) «другой», «ещё один», «дополнительный» (I'd like another cup of tea, please.) и 2) «другой», «иной» (Give me another cup of tea, please. I don't like this one.). Местоимение another используется только с исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе: another day, another place, another man.

Other означает 1) «другие», «дополнительные» (You are my good friend. I have no *other* friends.) и 2) «другие», «иные» (Let's go to the zoo or do you have *other* plans?). Слово *other* обычно используется с исчисляемыми существительными во множественном числе: other pupils, other places, other traditions. Сочетание **other** + **существительное** в речи часто заменя-

ется словом others. Например, I'd like to meet other teachers too. = I'd like

1) I can't talk to you now. Come ... day, please. 2) I have just one

12 Complete the sentences. Use another, other, others.

sandwich. May I have ... one? 3) This is a very bad road. Are there ... roads to the castle? 4) Some people like fish and ... don't. 5) There is ... big river in this part of Scotland. 6) Are there any ... mountains in Wales? 7) I can carry this big bag and some ... too. 8) Tomorrow will be ... sunny day. 9) We are going to visit France and some ... countries too. 10) If you like these postcards, I can bring you some 11) Where are my ... exercise books? I can't find them. 12) Some people travel by train, ... like travelling by car. 13) "Tom Sawyer" is a book about a young boy. ... book about a boy is "Oliver Twist". 14) After going to New York I'd like to see some ... towns in the USA.

Do It on Your Own

to meet others too

13 Ask for more things. Use the words from the box.

box, bag, cup, carton1, jug, plate

- 1) Can I have another ... of coffee?
- 2) Can we ask for another ... of milk?

¹ a carton [ˈka:tn] — пакет (картонная упаковка для продуктов)

3) Have you got another ... of sugar? 4) May I have another ... of chalk, please? 5) I'd like to buy another ... of pears. 6) Will you give me another ... of orange juice? 7) I'd like another ... of ham and eggs, please. 8) Could I have another ... of chocolates? 9) Could you give me another ... of tea? 10) Have you got another ... of pencils? 14 See how well you know geography of the USA. Give it a name. 1) Five big lakes in the north of the USA. 2) The largest city in the USA. 3) The biggest river of the USA. 4) The chain of mountains in the east of the USA. 5) The chain of mountains in the west of the USA. 6) The biggest state of the USA. 7) The capital of the USA. 8) The plains which are situated in the central part of the USA. Step Three Do It Together 1 Listen, 🔞 (9), and say what places in the USA they visited. a 1. Robert 3. Jim

口()

20

Say what can be deep, large, mighty.

1) (a) deep forest, ..., ..., ..., ..., ...

The United States of America

The United States of America is the world's fourth largest country. Only Russia, Canada and China have bigger territories ['teritəriz] than the US. There are fifty states in the country. Forty-eight are in the same part of North America. The other two are Alaska in the north, and Hawaii situated on eight islands in the Pacific.

The United States stretches from the Pacific Ocean to the Atlantic Ocean, which wash the country in the west and in the east. Long mountain chains run down the Pacific coast. Death Valley, the lowest place in North and South Americas, is in this part of the country. The Grand Canyon, which the Colorado River made millions of years ago, is here, too. In some places it is about 6 km deep. Farther east the tall peaks of the Rocky Mountains lie and run from Canada to Mexico. Beyond them the Great Plains, where the mighty Mississippi River flows, stretch. Another mountain chain, the Appalachians, runs down the eastern part of the United States. The USA borders on Canada in the north, where the five Great Lakes are situated, and Mexico in the south.

B. Listen, (10), and read the text again after it.





a) the American state situated on

b) the chain of mountains in the

c) the ocean that washes the USA

23

O

Thre

the islands.

in the east.

east of the USA.

Match the two columns.

1) The USA

2) Alaska

3) Hawaii

Действие: Результат:

Я вымыла посуду. → Посуда вымыта, она чистая. (Когда — неизвестно, неважно.)

Джон разбил вазу. → Ваза разбита.

(Вазы нет, есть только осколки.)

2. Present perfect образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола have/has и третьей формы основного глагола (V_3):

have/has + V₃

24

Для правильных глаголов форма V₃ совпадает с формой прошедшего

| 1 | II | III |
|--------|----------|----------|
| answer | answered | answered |
| cook | cooked | cooked |
| visit | visited | visited |
| finish | finished | finished |

I have answered the question. — Я ответил на вопрос. (Результат: мой ответ известен.) Mum has cooked supper. — Мама приготовила ужин. (Результат: ужин го-

John has visited the USA. — Джон посетил США. (Результат: у Джона есть представление об этой стране.) We have finished the work. — Мы закончили работу. (Результат: работа

завершена.)

3. У неправильных глаголов форму ∨₃ нужно запомнить. Вы найдёте её в таблице неправильных глаголов. Для начала запомните формы глаголов to see и to be.

| I | H | III |
|-----|----------|------|
| see | saw | seen |
| be | was/were | been |

Nick has seen a lot of French films.

We have been to Australia. We like it.

Обратите внимание на то, что с глаголом to be в этом времени часто употребляется предлог to.

I have been to Moscow. — Я бывал в Москве. She has been to London. — Она бывала в Лондоне.

| 7 Make up sentences. | | | | | | |
|--|--|--|------------|--|--|--|
| Jana | have has | played football before. seen all the new films. visited the best museums of the town. cleaned the classroom. been to the city centre. watched the news on TV. asked a lot of questions. cooked a very good dinner. finished the work. decided to have a holiday. started to write a diary. listened to some very good songs. | Step Three | | | |
| 8 Say what has happ | 8 Say what has happened. | | | | | |
| | E x a m p l e: Sam. His shoes are clean. (clean) | | | | | |
| Sam has cleaned his shoes. 1) James. His car is clean. (wash) 2) Kate. Her plants look green and fresh¹. (water) 3) Mum and dad. Their bedroom window is open. (open) 4) The children. They are not doing their homework. They are playing in the garden. (finish) 5) Mary. She knows what the film is about. (see) 6) My friends. They know what the British Museum is like. (visit) 7) Emma. Her hands are clean. (wash) 8) The Smiths. They know where they'll spend their weekend. (decide) 9) Margo. There is a lot of food in her fridge. | | | | | | |
| (be to the shops) 10) Jake. His supper is ready. (cook) | | | | | | |

¹ fresh [fre∫] — свежий

9 Today Cinderella is very tired. Can you say why?

Example: 1. She has washed her sisters' clothes.

26



- 1) wash, 2) carry, 3) clean, 4) cook, 5) clean, 6) work, 7) wash,
- 8) wash, 9) be, 10) water, 11) walk, 12) paint



10 Say what places they have been to (seen, visited) and what places they are going to see.

Example: 1) Ted — New York — Washington, D.C.

Ted has been to New York. He is going to visit Washington, D.C.

2) Roy and Alice - France - Germany Roy and Alice have been to France. They are going to see Ger-

many. 3) John — California — Washington

4) Billy and Beth — Canada — Mexico

5) Harry — the Appalachians — the Rocky Mountains

6) The Moles — the Mississippi — the Colorado 7) Miss Robertson — Alaska — Hawaii

8) Ann — Florida — the Great Plains

9) The friends — the Atlantic Ocean — the Pacific Ocean

10) Kitty and David — South America — North America 11) My cousins — the Pacific coast — the Atlantic coast

Do It on Your Own

- 11 Complete the sentences.
 - 1) Julia (has/have) visited the Grand Canyon. 2) Ed and his sister (has/have) travelled about the Atlantic coast. 3) My cousins (has/have) seen "The Big Apple". 4) John (has/have) played five

games of tennis. 5) The Richardsons (has/have) been to the Great

the USA. Some other rivers flow into it. 7) The ... Lakes in the north of the USA are very deep. The ... Lake is the largest and the ... Lake is the smallest. 8) ... is the capital of the USA. It is

28

Step Four

Do It Together

I liston to the sour (A/11) and sing also

1 Listen to the song, **(4)** (11), and sing along.

Billy Boy

Oh, where have you been, Billy Boy, Billy Boy,

Oh, where have you been, Charming Billy?

I have been to seek a wife

I have been <u>to seek</u> a wife, She's the joy of my life, She's a young thing

And cannot leave her mother.

Очаровашка Билли искать

молоденькая



| Did she ask you to come in, Billy Boy, Billy Boy, Did she ask you to come in, Charming Billy? Yes, she asked me to come in, There's a dimple in her chin, She's a young thing And cannot leave her mother. | ямочка на подбородке | 29 |
|--|--|---------|
| Can she bake a cherry pie, Billy Boy, Billy Boy, Can she bake a cherry pie, Charming Billy? She can bake a cherry pie, Quick as you can wink an eye, She's a young thing And cannot leave her mother. | печь, испечь вишнёвый пи- рог моргать | Step Fo |
| Can she make a feather ['feðə] bed, Billy Boy, Billy Boy, Can she make a feather bed, Charming Billy? She can make a feather bed, While standing on her head, She's a young thing And cannot leave her mother. | перо; перьевая | |
| How tall is she, Billy Boy, Billy Boy, How tall is she, Charming Billy? She is tall as any pine, And as straight as a pumpkin vine, She's a young thing And cannot leave her mother. | сосна плеть тыквы | |

How old is she, Billy Boy, Billy Boy, How old is she, Charming Billy? She is sixty times eleven, Twenty-eight and forty-seven,

And cannot leave her mother.

...? ... Washington, D.C.

...? ... Grand Canyon

...? ... Death Valley ...? ... Rockies ...? ... Pacific ...? ... Great Plains ...? ... New York ...? ... California ...? ... Superior ...? ... Mississippi ...? ... Canada ...? ... Washington ...? ... Appalachians

...? ... Ontario ...? ... Huron ...? ... Big Apple ...? ... Potomac

B. Say what you know about these places.

3 Say where you have been in your country and abroad.

Example: I have been to Kiev. We have been to Tarasovka.

the article "the". Listen, (12), and check.

She's a young thing

...? ... Mexico

...? ... Alaska

...? ... Hawaii

...? ... USA

...? ... Texas

...? ... Asia

...? ... Atlantic

2 A. Say under what categories these words match and where you must use

660

Continents:

Oceans:

States: _____

Cities:

Lakes:

Rivers:

Mountain chains:

Others:

Countries:

口))



5 Say what has happened. Example: Nick has opened the window. 32 1. 2. 5. 4. 3.

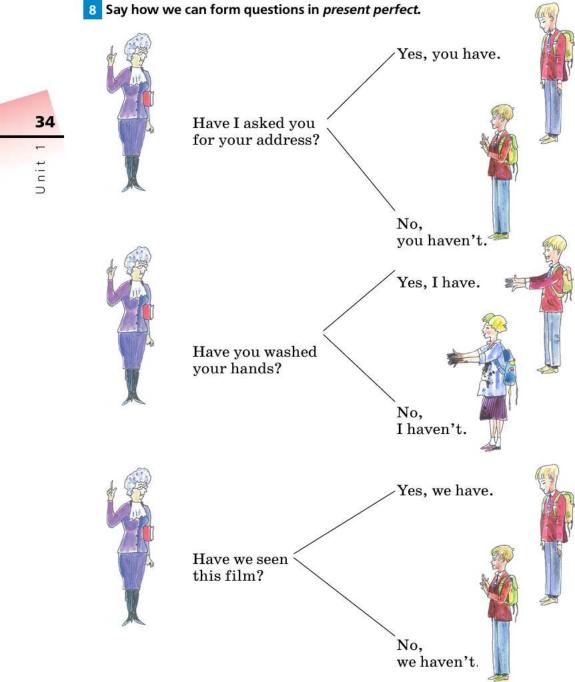
13) My son wants to read "Hamlet", one of the most famous plays

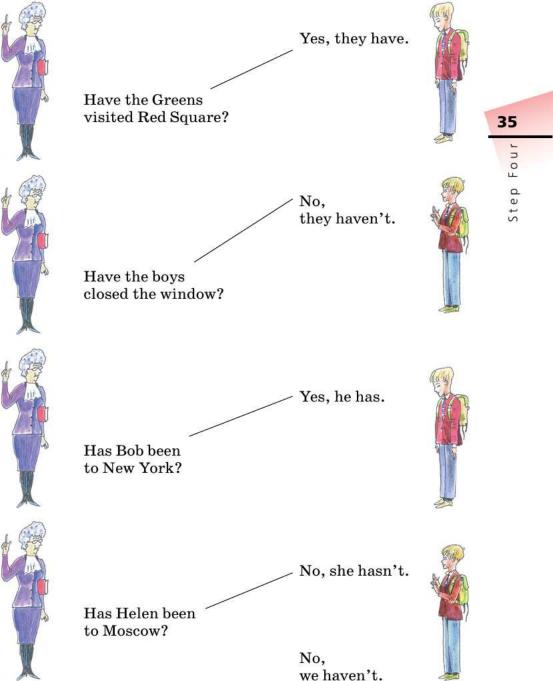
6 Say how we can form negations in present perfect.

written by W. Shakespeare. (read)

ding. (cook)

¹ negation [nɪˈgeɪ∫n] — отрицание





9 Answer these questions.

36

- 1) Have you been to Moscow?
- 2) Have you seen Red Square?
- 3) Have you travelled a lot this year?
- 4) Has your father visited the USA?
- 5) Has your mother cooked pizza?
- 6) Have you played baseball?
- 7) Have your friends played tennis?
- 8) Have you helped your parents a lot this year?
- 9) Have you seen any of the Harry Potter films? 10) Have you asked your parents "difficult" questions?

Focus

swim

Запомните три формы следующих неправильных глаголов.

Ш Ш do did done [dʌn] begun [bɪˈgʌn] begin began rung [rʌŋ] ring rang run [rʌn] run ran

swam

come [k_Am] come came become [bɪˈkʌm] become became 10 Ann helps Mrs Hicks about the house. She does everything Mrs Hicks asks

her to do very quickly1. Complete their dialogues. A.

swum [swAm]

Mrs Hicks: Ann, ring up the post office about the letter,

please. Ann (in several minutes): I have done it, Mrs Hicks. I have

rung the post-office. They know about the letter.

B.

Mrs Hicks: Ann, do my bedroom, please.

Ann (in half an hour): Mrs Hicks, I ... Your bedroom is clean.

¹ quickly ['kwikli] — быстро

Mrs Hicks: Ann, begin cooking lunch, please. Ann: I..., Mrs Hicks. I am making some chicken soup now.

D.

Mrs Hicks: Ann, go shopping but come back quickly.

Ann (in 40 minutes): I... back from the shop, Mrs Hicks. Now we've got all the vegetables you wanted.

11 Elizabeth Foster has six children. Say what their jobs are.

Example: Eliza has become a doctor.



12 Say how many a) kilometres they have run, b) metres they have swum.

Example: a) Boris — 10. Boris has run ten kilometres. b) Helen — 25. Helen has swum twenty-five metres.

a) Bob - 2

Frank — 4

Sarah — 1

Andy - 5Tracy — 3

b) Emma — 50

Jane - 100

Samantha — 150

Toby - 200Mark - 125

Do It on Your Own

- 13 Complete the sentences. Use present perfect.
 - 1) Mrs Johnson (become) a writer. 2) Bob and Charles (be) to the States many times. 3) You (swim) in the Pacific? 4) We (not, do) our lessons. 5) Why you (not, help) your friend? 6) The girls

37

Step

3

(jump) high. Their results are very good. But they (run) 5 kilometres badly. 7) Betty (begin) learning English. 8) Polly (ring up) Doctor Gordon? 9) Boris (come) back? — No, he hasn't. He never comes back earlier than six. 10) Jane says she (not, see) any of the Harry Potter films. 14 Here are some answers. What are the questions? Use present perfect. 1) ...? — Yes, I have. I rang up granny in the morning.

38

- 2) ...? Yes, he has. He came home at 6. 3) ...? — Yes, they have. They did their homework in the after
 - noon.
 - 4) ...? Yes, we have. We swam in the lake in summer. 5) ...? — Yes, she has. She began learning English when she was
 - eight. 6) ...? — Yes, I have. I became a teacher long ago.
 - 7) ...? Yes, they have. They visited the British Museum when they were in London.
 - 8) ...? Yes, she has. She cooked the chicken after work.
 - 9) ...? Yes, he has. He saw this film some time ago.
 - $10) \dots ?$ Yes, we have. We were in Vladimir last summer.

Step Five

Do It Together

1 Listen, 🚳 (13), and say where Captain Drake has been or hasn't been to.

Asia? India? China? Australia? Sydney? North America? South America? Brazil? Venezuela?

口()

2 Say why they are happy. Use present perfect.

- 1) James is happy because he (do) his homework and can go to the cinema with his friends.
- - 2) Peter is happy because he (swim) 100 metres in two minutes. 3) Samantha and Jenny are happy because the bell (ring). There
 - are no more classes and they can go home.
 - 4) Tom and Roy are happy because they (see) a film with their favourite actor, Jackie Chan.

6) Jack is happy because he (become) captain of his football team¹.

7) Mary and Kate (be) to New York. Now they know a lot about this city.

8) Anna is happy because she (begin) learning French.

9) Peter is happy because he (arrive) at school on time. He is usually late.

10) Julia is happy because she (play) her favourite sonata on the piano very well.



Focus

Present perfect часто используется с наречиями already [o:l'redi] (уже), ever (когда-нибудь), just (только что), never (никогда), yet (ещё), которые служат своеобразными указателями этого времени и в предложении обычно стоят между вспомогательным и основным глаголами. Yet может употребляться и в конце предложения.

I have already done it. — Я это уже сделал.

He has just come. — Он только что пришёл.

They have never seen her. — Они её никогда не видели.

We haven't visited Mexico yet. — Мы ещё не посетили Мексику.



Have you ever been to the USA? — Вы когда-нибудь бывали в США?

¹ a team [ti:m] — команда

39

Fiv Step Mexico, Death Valley, Covent Garden, Trafalgar Square, the Tretyakov Gallery, the Hermitage, Milan, the Grand Canyon, Washington, D.C., the Great Lakes, Buckingham Palace, the Rocky Mountains, the Seine

Example: — Have you ever been to Seattle?

- No, I haven't. I have never been to Seattle.
- Have you ever seen the Louvre?
- Yes, I have. I have just come from Paris.



Focus

fall

Запомните три формы следующих неправильных глаголов.

fallen

| I, | 11 | 111 |
|-------------|------------|------------|
| read [ri:d] | read [red] | read [red] |
| write | wrote | written |
| speak | spoke | spoken |
| take | took | taken |
| eat | ate [et] | eaten |

fell

4 Mary loves travelling. Look at the map and say where she has been or hasn't been to in the USA.



41

- 1) Have you ever written a letter abroad?
- 2) Have you ever read books by English writers?
- 3) Have you ever spoken to English people or Americans?
- 4) Have you ever eaten traditional English or American food?
- 5) Have you ever fallen in love¹ with a town or a city in Russia or abroad?6) Have you ever taken photos of interesting or unusual build-
- ings and monuments?
 7) Have you ever given your friends pictures as a souvenir?
- 8) Have you ever been abroad?
- 9) Have you ever done foreign towns and cities?
- 10) Which of these things would you like to do?

6 A. Learn to form special questions in present perfect.

Where have you been? What have we done?

How many books have they read?

How much porridge has the dog eaten?

How well have they learnt the poem?

Whose pen have I taken? Why has he come?

Who(m) has she seen?

¹ to fall in love — влюбиться

| | B. Complete the dialogues and act them out. |
|---|--|
| | 1) — Have you been to the US? — Yes, — What cities? — I have visited Washington, D.C. and some small towns on the Atlantic coast. |
| | 2) — Have you read any of the Harry Potter books? — Yes, — How many books? — I have read three books. — What books? — "Harry Potter and the Philosopher's [fi'lɒsəfəz] Stone". ("Harry Potter and the Chamber ['tʃeɪmbə] of Secrets", "Harry Potter and the Prisoner ['prɪzənə] of Azkaban", "Harry Potter and the Goblet of Fire", "Harry Potter and the Half-Blood [ˌha:f 'blʌd] Prince".) |
| | 3) — Has Frank taken any pictures? — Yes, — How many pictures of the school building has he? —, I think. |
| | 4) — Has Harrison spoken to Robert? — Yes, I think he — Has he given him the photos? — Yes, — What photos? — I don't know. |
| 7 | Look at the pictures and answer the questions. |
| | A. |

E x a m p l e: - Who has been to the cinema?

42

- Mr Hopper has.





Mr Blake

1) Who has written the letter?



Emma

2) Who has read the book?



Mrs Gordon and Polly

3) Who has taken the umbrellas with them?



4) Who has played the piano?



Lizzy

5) Who has given Rex the bone?



Mr Ford

6) Who has spoken to the people in the hall?



Sally and Terry

7) Who has eaten all the porridge?

\boldsymbol{B} .

Example: — Mr Hopper hasn't been to the cinema, has he? — (But) yes, he has./No, he hasn't.

- 1) Mr Blake has written the letter, hasn't he?
- 2) Emma hasn't read the book, has she?
- 3) The girls have played the piano, haven't they?
- 4) Mrs Gordon and Polly haven't taken umbrellas with them, have they?
- 5) Lizzy has given a bone to the dog, hasn't she?
- 6) Mr Ford has spoken to the people in the hall, hasn't he?
- 7) Sally and Terry haven't eaten their porridge, have they?
- 8 A. Read Kate's letter to Tanya and say what places Kate has visited in Washington, D.C.

Kate's Letter

8/23/04 Holiday Inn Washington, D.C.

Dear Tanya,

I am writing to you to tell you about our stay in Washington, D.C. You have asked me to write about the US capital. So I am doing it in this letter. We really love the city. It is so green and so clean. It is situated on the Potomac River, on a piece [pi:s] of land called the District of Columbia [kəˈlʌmbiə], which is why people



¹ a piece of land called — кусок земли под названием







call the US capital Washington, D.C. It is not the biggest city in the United States, but it is the most important.

The buildings are not very high, the streets and avenues ['ævɪnju:z] are straight, green and beautiful. The longest and the biggest avenues are named after American states. We have already done the centre of the city. We have been to the White House and seen the Capitol. The Capitol is really great. This is where the United States Congress meets and makes laws 2.

The building of the White House is very beautiful with tall columns ['kpləmz] and the flag on the roof. It is the US president's residence. This is where the president lives and works. It is one of the most famous buildings in the world. Its name comes from the fact that it is a white house. Tourists can't see the part where the president lives, but they can see the Red Room, the Blue

² a law [lɔ:] — закон

¹ are named after — названы по

口()

| Dislikes: | | | | |
|--|-----------------|--|-------------------------------------|--------|
| I'm afraid I don't lil | ke | | | |
| I can't say I like | | | | |
| I've never liked | | | | |
| I (really) hate | | | | |
| I can't stand | 2 121 | | | |
| I don't think is (a | | | | |
| | nice wonde | eful | | 47 |
| 1461-6 1-7 | 011005-612005-6 | Tiui | | Φ |
| I think is (are) | bad horrible | | | Fiv |
| | awful | | | |
| | awiai | | | d a |
| 43 6 1 | | | | Step |
| 12 Say what you feel | | | | 01 |
| skiing and skating | | ars | doing your flat | |
| shopping for food | | | porridge | |
| shopping for clot | | winters | taking pictures | |
| pop songs | • trave | • | • autumn | |
| • strong coffee | • spide | | roller skating | |
| milk chocolate | • black | k-and-white films | washing-up | |
| • cats | | | | |
| NG a be | | | | |
| 13 Act out dialogues | about your like | es and dislikes. | | |
| Example: | | | | |
| | hat do you feel | labout nets? | | |
| | n rather fond o | 있는 전경하는 4개 100 10 11 12 12 13 1 3 1 10 10 ~ TH 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 | | |
| Figure 2. France | nd what pets do | | | |
| | | dogs. I think they are | e verv nice. | |
| | , | | | |
| | | | | |
| pets | | sports | | |
| | | 3 | | |
| animals | | food | | |
| | | | | |
| school subjects | | hobbies | | |
| school subjects | Ŀ | Hobbics | | |
| | | | | |
| working about th | ne house | | | |

2) Experience is the mother of wisdom. 3) There's no place like home. 48 Do It on Your Own 15 Complete the sentences. Use present perfect. come, write, become, eat, fall, do, read, take, give, see 1) What's your cousin's job? — He ... just ... a photographer. 2) Do you know how to make porridge? — I'm afraid I don't. I ... never ... it before. 3) What are you doing? — I'm writing Christmas cards. I two and now I'm writing the third one. 4) What's the dog playing with? $-I \dots$ him my tennis ball. 5) What's the matter? — I ... just ... down. Look at my clothes! They look awful! 6) I am going out, mum. — ... you ... your umbrella? It's raining. 7) Autumn ... - Yes, it has. The leaves are falling off the trees. 8) What are you looking at? — This beautiful flower. I ... never ... such flowers before. 9) Tell us the poet's biography, Peter. — Sorry, sir, I ... not ... the book. 10) What is goulash ['gu:la:[] like? — I don't know. I ... never ... it. 16 Write ten true sentences. Use present perfect. Example: I have read the Harry Potter books many times. **Check Your Progress** 17 Write TEST 1 (Workbook 1, pp. 34—39) and check your results. Tasks 2 3 5 7 Total 4 1 6 8 7 Maximum result 5 12 12 4 5 10 11 66 Your result

What Do You Think?

14 Which of these proverbs are true? Explain why.
1) It takes all sorts to make a world.

English – a Global Language

Step One

Do It Together

1 A. Listen, 🚳 (15), and complete the text.

The English Language

More people speak English than any other language except¹ (1). People speak English in Britain, Ireland, (2), New Zealand, (3) and some other countries. Altogether² more than (4) million people speak English as their everyday language. Another (5) million or more speak English as a foreign language. Most English words come from old Anglo-Saxon³, (6) or (7) words. Some people think that the English language is one of the richest languages of the world and has up to a (8) words.

B. What is the English language like nowadays?

2 Explain why it is so.

Example: — There are no pies on the plate. John (eat).

- John has eaten them.
- 1) Their house is now yellow!
 - Yes, they (paint)

49

tep One



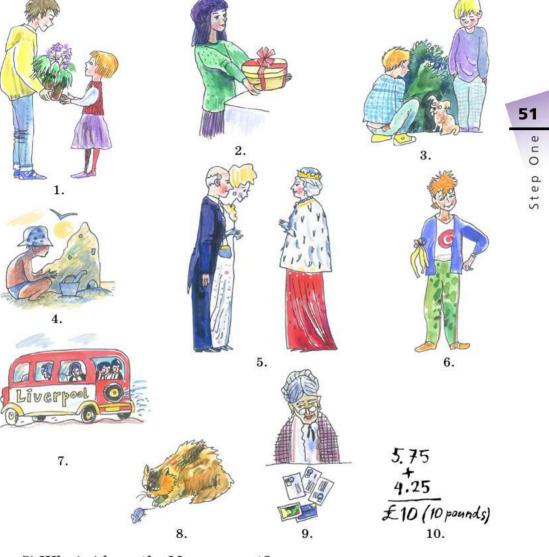


¹ except [ik'sept] — кроме

altogether [ˌɔːltəˈgeðə] — в целом
 Anglo-Saxon [ˌæŋgləʊˈsæksn] — the language of the Anglo-Saxons, the people who lived in England in early times, from about 600 AD.

— I think he does. He (be) ... there many times. John, your car looks so clean! — It should be. I (wash) Your grandparents are tired. — Yes, they (come) back from the shops. 5) — Does Harry know about it? 50 — Yes, I (give) ... him a call. 6) — Is the book interesting? — I don't know yet. I just (begin) ... reading it. 7) — Why is Jason in hospital? — He (fall) ... off his bike. 8) — Roy knows nothing about our meeting. — Sorry. I (not, speak) ... to him yet. **Focus** Запомните, что у следующих неправильных глаголов вторая и третья формы совпадают. Ш catch caught [ko:t] caught [ko:t] teach taught [to:t] taught [to:t] bring brought [bro:t] brought [bro:t] buy bought [bo:t] bought [bo:t] fight fought [fo:t] fought [fo:t] think thought [θo:t] thought [θo:t] build built built send sent sent spend spent spent meet met met eave left left found found find get got got have had had 3 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. 1) What has Frank bought for his little sister? 2) What has Polly just brought home? 3) What have the children found? 4) What has little Bob built?

He knows everything about Moscow.



- 5) Who(m) have the Morgans met?
- 6) Has Jim had an apple? What has he just had?
- 7) Where have the friends left for?
- 8) What has Tom caught?
- 9) How many letters and how many postcards has Lena sent to her granny?
- 10) How much money have the girls spent on books?

4 Work in pairs. You have a lot of things to do. Write a plan and tick what you have already done. Tell your friend about your day. Example: to wash up ✓ I have washed up.

I have bought bread. to buy bread 🗸 I haven't bought milk yet. to buy milk \

Focus

52

Present perfect часто употребляется со следующими словами и словосо-

четаниями: this morning this week this evening this month

today this year I haven't seen Victor this morning. (Утро ещё не закончилось.) We have been to Moscow this month. (Месяц ещё не завершён.)

5 Ask your friends:

- 1) what places they have visited this year;
- 2) what books they have read this week; 3) what they have bought this month;
- 4) what they have written today;
- 5) where they have been this week;
- 6) what films they have seen this month; 7) who(m) they have spoken to today;
- 6 Say what you haven't done this year, this week, this month, today but would like to do.

8) what they have eaten today.

Example: I haven't travelled much this year. I would like to go to England and France next year.

Focus Если надо узнать, совершил ли уже кто-то какое-либо действие или нет,

в конце вопроса в present perfect часто используется наречие yet. Have you been to the bank yet? — Вы уже были в банке?

Have you done your room yet? — Ты уже убрал в комнате? Has he come yet? — Он уже пришёл?

- Иногда в подобных вопросах можно также встретить наречие already. John, have you been to the bank already? — Джон, ты что, уже в банке побывал?
- Have you already eaten all the cake, Ann? Ты что, уже весь пирог съела, Аня?
- Как видите, задающий Джону и Ане эти вопросы скорее выражает своё
- удивление или недоумение.
- 7 When Jim comes home after school, there is nobody in. His mother usually

 \subseteq 0

Step

- calls him to ask if he has done what he should do. What are her questions? Example: to have lunch — Jim, have you had lunch yet?
- 1) to change clothes
 - 2) to read the textbook 3) to do the exercises
 - 4) to listen to the English songs
 - 5) to play the piano
 - 6) to water the flowers 7) to ring up granny
 - 8) to work on the computer
 - 9) to take Rex out 10) to give milk to the cat
- 8 A. Read the text and say what the figures 450,000; 35,000; 10,000—

12,000 mean in it.

Words... Words... Words...

We say them, we hear them, we read them and write them. And telephones, mobiles, radios, televisions, computers are all there to carry words to all parts of the world — and even to the Moon and back. How many words must a language have? For example²,

there are more than 450,000 words in Webster's Third New International Dictionary. No person ['p3:sn] knows all of them, but most people are able to understand about 35,000 and use about 10,000-12,000. Usually you use only one-tenth (1/10) of the words you understand.

¹ a figure ['figə] — цифра ² for example — например

口())

54

2

Unit

- [bailingwal] and multilingual [maltilingwal]. They give information about words in one (mono-), two (bi-) or more than two (multi-) languages. B. Listen, (16), and read the text.

dictionaries:

- 9 Look at the two dictionary entries¹ and answer the questions.
 - a) library ['laibrəri] n (pl libraries) a room or building for books.
 - **librarian** [lai'breəriən] n someone who works in a library. (Oxford

monolingual

Basic English Dictionary, Oxford University Press, 1995.) b) handy ['hændi] adj (handier, handiest) 1. (clever with hands) умелый, мастеровой, рукастый ($coll.^2$); he is ~ у него золотые руки. 2. (easy to handle) удобный для пользования. 3. (convenient) удобный, сподручный (coll.); it may come in ~ это может

If you hear or read a new word and want to know what it means, you look the word up in a dictionary. Modern dictionaries are

[.mpnəuˈlɪngwəl],

Press, 2000.) Questions 1) Which of the two words comes from a monolingual (bilingual)

пригодиться. (Oxford Russian Dictionary. Oxford University

- dictionary?
- 2) Where can you find information about how to pronounce the
- words? 3) How do you know that one of the words is a noun and the other
- is an adjective?
- 4) Which of the words has one and which more than one mean-
- ing?
- 5) Which of the dictionaries gives word combinations?
- 6) Which of the dictionaries gives derivatives³? 7) What does ~ stand for?

¹ a dictionary entry ['entri] — словарная статья ² coll. = colloquial [kə'ləukwiəl] — разговорный

³ a derivative [dɪˈrɪvətɪv] — производное слово

| Country | Language (official) | People | Nations |
|----------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------|
| America (the USA) | English | an American/ Americans | (the) Americans |
| Australia | English | an Australian/ Australians | (the) Australians |
| Canada | English/ French | a Canadian/Canadians | (the) Canadians |
| Germany | German | a German/Ger- mans | (the) Germans |
| Italy | Italian | an Italian/Italians | (the) Italians |
| Mexico | Spanish | a Mexican/Mexicans | (the) Mexicans |
| Norway | Norwegian | a Norwegian/Norwegians | (the) Norwegians |
| Russia | Russian | a Russian/Russians | (the) Russians |
| China | Chinese | a Chinese/Chinese (people) | the Chinese |
| Portugal | Portuguese | a Portuguese/Portuguese (people) | the Portuguese |
| Japan | Japanese | a Japanese/Japa- nese (people) | the Japanese |
| Vietnam | Vietnam- ese | a Vietnamese/Vietnamese (people) | the Vietnamese |

| | Lan- | Peo | ple | |
|--------------|--------------------------|---|--|-------------|
| Coun- try | guage (offi- cial) | Sing. | Pl. | Nations |
| Holland | Dutch | a Dutchman/ a Dutchwoman | Dutchmen/ Dutchwomen | the Dutch |
| Britain | English | a Briton = a British per- son | Britons = Brit- ish people | the British |
| England | English | an English- man/an Eng- lishwoman | Englishmen/ Englishwomen, English people | the English |
| Ireland | Irish English | an Irishman/ an Irishwoman | Irishmen/Irish- women, Irish people | the Irish |
| France | French | a Frenchman/ | Frenchmen/ | the French |



Focus

Обратите внимание на то, что:

- название нации в целом обычно употребляется с определённым ар-
- тиклем the English (англичане); the French (французы), the Chinese (китайцы), the Russians (русские). Однако в случае слов на -an (the) Americans. (the) Canadians он может опускаться;
- в некоторых случаях наименование отдельных представителей нации образуется при помощи сложных слов или словосочетаний — an English-
- man/an Englishwoman, English people;
 во фразах типа «Я русский», «Он англичанин» чаще используется прилагательное, чем существительное. Ср.: I am Russian. He is English. They
- лагательное, чем существительное. Ср.: I am Russian. He is English. They are American. (I am a Russian. He is an Englishman. They are Americans. возможные, но значительно реже употребляемые варианты.)
- 11 Look at the maps and say what countries you can see there, people of what nationalities live there and what languages they speak.

Example: Number 1 on Map II is France. The French live in France. They speak French.

Do It on Your Own

- 12 Complete the sentences. Use nationality words.
 - 1) Did you eat ... cheese when you were in Holland?
 - 2) ... tea comes from China. It is world-famous.3) Sumo is a ... sport in which two very large men fight.
 - 4) In some ... restaurants you can eat borsch, blini and drink tea from a samovar.
 - 5) The ... live on the British Isles.
 - 6) Do people in Mexico speak ... like people in Spain?
 - 7) Mike and Jack are Canadians. Do they speak ... or ...?
 - 8) The ... celebrate the New Year holiday in the hottest time of the year.
 - 9) When Paul was in Paris, he met some very nice Now they are good friends.
 - 10) The Grimm brothers are They wrote their tales in the ... language.

- 13 This is John Barker. Write questions and ask if he has already:
 - 1) been to Washington, D.C.;
 - 2) seen the Capitol;
 - 3) taken some pictures of the White House;
 - 4) sent home some postcards;
 - 5) had a trip to New York;
 - 6) found many places of interest in the US;
 - 7) brought some souvenirs from America;
 - 8) met interesting people in the USA;
 - 9) bought some American books.



口()

Step Two

Do It Together

1 Listen to the poem, (18), read it aloud and say what can help you to see the wind. Say in which lines of the poem Christina Rossetti uses present perfect?

The Wind

(Christina Rossetti)

Who has seen the wind? Neither I, nor you;

But when the leaves hang trembling,

The wind is passing through.

Who has seen the wind?

Neither you nor I;

But when the trees bow down their

heads, The wind is passing by.

кланяются, склоняют головы

проходит сквозь

ния, ниты

дрожа

них

проходит мимо

- Which is right: a) or b)? Say in which four cases both are right.
 - 1. a) The Chinese have come this evening.
 - b) Chinese have come this evening.
 - 2. a) Is he Norwegian?b) Is he a Norwegian?

Say in which four cases both are right. — Скажи, в каких четырёх случаях правильны оба варианта.

3. a) The French are famous for their beautiful clothes. b) French are famous for their beautiful clothes. 4. a) Russians are brave people. b) The Russians are brave people. 5. a) Irish live on an island. b) The Irish live on an island. 6. a) Those people who live in Holland speak the Dutch. 59 b) Those people who live in Holland speak Dutch. 7. a) The Japanese is a difficult language. b) Japanese is a difficult language. 8. a) The Italians like having fun. b) Italians like having fun. 3 Work in pairs. Ask if your friend has done these things this week (month, year, today). Example: to do the room - Have you done your room this week? - Yes, I have./No, I haven't. 1) to learn a poem by heart, 2) to take pictures, 3) to buy a dictionary, 4) to swim in the swimming pool, 5) to find some money, 6) to be to the shops, 7) to see a good film, 8) to bring some flowers to your mum, 9) to give a call to your grandparent(s), 10) to visit the school library, 11) to spend a lot of money, 12) to catch a cold 4 Colin Baxter is having a birthday party this evening. He wants to know if everything is ready. Say what questions he asks Alice, his helper. Example: to send e-mails to my friends — Have you sent e-mails to my friends yet? 1) to get answers from my friends 2) to clean the floors 3) to do the dining room 4) to make an/the apple pie 5) to bake a/the cake 6) to buy fruit and sweets 7) to send for the flowers 8) to ring up my mother

9) to bring more chairs from the library

10) to think of some nice music

2) v звучать

belong [bɪˈlɒŋ] — принадлежать land [lænd] -1) земля;

sound [saund] -1) n звук;

2) метод, способ develop [dr'veləp] вать(ся)

grow [grəu] — расти by and by — постепенно

also ['ɔ:lsəʊ] — тоже

slowly ['sləuli] — медленно

way [wei] - 1) путь, дорога;

 \boldsymbol{B} .

belong: to belong to someone, to belong to some place. These exercise books don't belong to me. This land belongs to a big family. Which swimming club do you belong to? land: 1) (countable) a beautiful land, foreign lands. I'd like to

5 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words. Listen, 🕣 (19), and re-

see a lot of lands and to meet a lot of people. 2) (uncountable) dry land, stony land. Columbus's sailors didn't see land for a long time. speech: a good speech, a long speech, to make a speech. James

made a very interesting speech in Parliament yesterday. His speech is very difficult to understand. sound (n): the sounds of music, strange sounds, beautiful

sounds. Strange sounds were coming from the kitchen. sound (v): to sound good, to sound English, to sound like the truth. That sounds like a train. Your new song sounds beautiful.

This sentence sounds like good English. forget (forgot, forgotten): to forget a word, to forget an/the address, to forget slowly (easily). I've forgotten her telephone number. She's forgotten where she has left her car. I'll never

forget my first teacher. forget-me-not: Forget-me-nots are blue and pink, they are spring flowers.

slowly: to walk slowly, to speak slowly. He slowly opened his eyes. We drove slowly down the country road.

also: He speaks English and he also speaks German. I like bananas and I also like oranges.

way: 1) a short way, a long way, an easy way, a funny way, the best way. Which is the way to the city centre? Will you be able to

| grow (grew, grown [grəun]): to grow well, to grow slowly. Grass | 1754 |
|--|----------|
| grows after rain. Oranges grow on trees, you know. The farmer | 1 |
| has grown a lot of apples this year. | 61 |
| grow up: When I grow up, I will be a librarian. | - |
| by and by: They will change by and by. | T W O |
| | <u> </u> |
| Answer the questions. | Step |
| 1) English, German, French and Russian are Indo-European | S |
| [indəujuərə pi:ən] languages. Does English belong to the same | |
| language group as German? French? Russian? | |
| 2) Do you think languages develop? | |
| 3) Do you think you are able to make a speech in English? in Rus- | |
| sian? | |
| 4) To what foreign lands have you been? Would you like to go? | |
| 5) Why do teachers call some children "slow learners"? | |
| | |
| 6) What is the right way to read the word c-a-u-g-h-t? | |
| 7) How many sounds are there in the word c-a-u-g-h-t? And how | |
| many letters? | |
| 8) What's the best way to learn English? | |
| 9) Is your love of the English language growing by and by or | |
| not? | |
| 10) Are you also thinking of learning another foreign langua- | |
| ge? | |
| 11) Do you think people can forget their own language living in | |
| a foreign land? | |
| 12) Do you easily forget names? | |
| 100 B B 500 7 | |
| A. Read the text and choose the right item in the sentences after it. | |
| Why Don't We All Speak the Same Language? | |
| There is a theory ['θιǝri] which says that at one time, at the beginning of history all people spoke the same language. They call it a parent language. Maybe there were two or more parent languages then. At first they belonged to small groups of people. By and by these groups became bigger and went to live in new lands. In | |

find your way to my house? 2) What is the best way to learn a

develop: to develop into sb/sth, to develop from sth. A boy develops into a man. That little village has developed into a great city. I'd like to develop this idea. French developed from Latin.

language? He has a strange way of talking.

their new countries they first spoke their old language but with time their speech began to sound different. In the new places those people stopped using some of the old words and so they forgot them. The structure ['straktʃə] of their sentences slowly changed too. They also made new words to speak about new things they found in the new lands. After a long time the changes in words, pronunciation [prəˌnʌnsiˈeɪʃn] and grammar were so great that their language began to sound like a different one

things they found in the new lands. After a long time the changes in words, pronunciation [prəˌnʌnsi'eɪʃn] and grammar were so great that their language began to sound like a different one. That was how a new language was born. In just these ways, Spanish, French and Portuguese developed from Latin ['lætɪn] and English, Norwegian, Dutch and some other languages grew from an early form of the German language.

- 1) A parent language is the language ... modern languages developed.a) from whichb) into which
- 2) At first the parent language belonged to ... people.
 - a) a lot of b) rather few
- 3) With time bigger groups of people ... the new lands.a) leftb) left for
- 4) In the new lands their language began to \dots .
 - a) change b) become worse
- 5) In the new lands people forgot ... of the old words.
 a) all b) some
- 6) A new language is borna) slowlyb) overnight¹
- 7) French and Spanish belong to
 - a) the same language b) different languages
- 8) Norwegian and Dutch developed from
 - a) Latin b) an early form of the German language
- B. Listen, (20), and read the text.



Уже известное вам слово **too** и новое слово **also** переводятся одинаково, с помощью русского «тоже». Обратите внимание на то, что too обычно стоит в конце предложения. She speaks French too.



(字)

¹ overnight [,əuvə'naɪt] — 3∂ .: очень быстро

Слово also чаще используется в середине, обычно перед основным глаголом (кроме глагола to be). She also speaks French. She can also speak French. Ho: She is also French. Also иногда используется в начале предложения. He has written two letters. Also he has written three postcards. 63 Для разговорной речи более типично употребление слова too.

0 ×

Example: I've been to the USA. I've been to Canada too. I've been to the USA and also to Canada. (I've been to the USA

8 Paraphrase these sentences.

and I've also been to Canada.) 1) I like growing roses. I like growing forget-me-nots too. 2) Great Britain is a beautiful island. Ireland is a beautiful is-

land too. 3) Watching television tonight sounds good to me. Watching

videos sounds good too. 4) Spanish developed from Latin. Italian developed from Latin too.

5) English grew from an early form of the German language.

Norwegian grew from an early form of the German language too. 6) French sounds beautiful. Italian sounds beautiful too. 7) Going abroad is a good way of learning English. Listening to

tapes and reading books is a good way of learning English too. 8) Lilies of the valley are spring flowers. Forget-me-nots are spring flowers too.

Focus

go

Запомните три формы следующих неправильных глаголов.

П Ш break broken broke

choose chose chosen driven ['drɪvən] drive drove ride rode

went

ridden [rɪdn] gone [gpn]

1) Sorry, I (break) your favourite pen. 2) Which of the mobiles

you (choose)? 3) Little Dick never (ride) a horse. 4) Is Frank at home? — Yes, he just (drive) back. 5) Where Nick (go)? — He

(go) to the bank. 6) Jane says she never (break) her leg. 7) You

(choose) a birthday present for Mary yet? 8) You ever (ride) a bike? 9) I already (drive) my father's car. 10) Where is Ann? Where she (go)? — She (go) to the cinema. There is a very good film on at the "Rossiva" cinema.



Focus

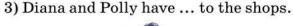
Обратите внимание на разный смысл предложений.

- 1) He has gone to the bank. (Он ушёл в банк. Он сейчас в банке.)
- 2) He has been to the bank today. (Он был (побывал) в банке, но его уже там нет.)
- 10 Complete the sentences. Use gone or been.
 - 1) Mark has ... to the swimming pool.



2) Sid has ... to the library.







4) Mr Hunt has ... to the airport.

5) The girls have ... to the cinema.





6) Greg and Tony have ... to the museum.



Do It on Your Own

11 Write the same in English.

Принадлежать семье, постепенно, развиваться, медленно, произнести речь, латинский язык, меняться медленно, лучший способ, длинный путь, приятные звуки, расти на юге, сухая земля, прекрасная страна, превратиться в мужчину.

12 Mr Norman Andrews has had a very busy day today. Write what he has done.

Example: to be to the bank

Norman has been to the bank.

- 1) to make a speech at the meeting
- 2) to have lunch with his boss

65

Step T

- 5) to choose a birthday present
- 6) to ride a bike in the park
- 7) to go to bed early

Step Three

66

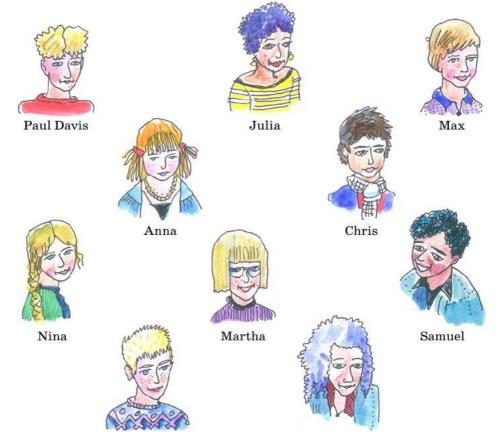
7

Unit

Do It Together

1 Listen, 🚱 (21), and say what their nationalities are.

Example: Paul Davis is British.



Frida

口()

- 2 Say how good you are as a pupil. Choose a, b or c. 1) You come to school a) well before the bell b) just before the bell c) after the bell 2) You remember to bring a) all your school books b) some of your school books c) very few of your school books 3) You ... forget to do your homework.
 - a) never b) sometimes
 - c) always 4) Your answers
 - a) always sound correct b) sometimes sound correct c) do not often sound correct
 - 5) Your tests are a) usually good
 - b) sometimes good c) practically never good 6) You have developed ... in your school subjects.
 - a) a great interest b) some interest c) no interest
 - 7) This interest is a) growing b) growing very slowly
 - c) not growing at all¹
 - 8) You ... being a pupil. a) love b) rather like

c) hate

1 at all — cobcem

Sum up your points: a = 3, b = 2, c = 1. If you have 20-24points, you are a fantastic pupil. If you have 16—20 points, you are a good pupil; if you have less than 16 points, you should try harder.

67

Вы уже знаете, что новые слова в английском языке можно образовать при помощи суффиксов и префиксов (приставок). Познакомьтесь с некоторыми новыми суффиксами.

Суффикс -less указывает на отсутствие чего-либо, какого-либо качества и служит для образования прилагательных.

child + less = childless (бездетный)

end + less = endless (бесконечный) speech + less = speechless (немой)

use + less = useless (бесполезный) cloud + less = cloudless (безоблачный)

Суффикс - Іу служит для образования наречий и реже — прилагательных.

deep + ly = deeply (глубоко)kindly — добродушный slow + ly = slowly (медленно)lovely — прелестный terrible + ly = terribly (ужасно

Обратите внимание, что если прилагательное оканчивается на у, то в наречии эта буква меняется на і:

easy - easily happy — happily busy — busily heavy — heavily lazy — lazily dry - dryly/drily

3 Form adverbs from the adjectives and use some of them in the sentences.

cold, dry, nice, warm, bad, happy, sad, brave, busy, free, heavy, honest, lazy, light, neat, selfish, special, stylish, sure, terrible, traditional, real

1) Mr Robinson always speaks to me 2) Pat walked ... in the park looking at the trees. 3) Jenny dresses ... and always wears fashionable shoes. 4) Many teachers ... begin teaching English with present progressive. 5) Bob fought ... but didn't win. 6) Mrs

Davidson stood up ... from her chair and went to the kitchen to cook. 7) Patrick told me ... that he didn't like my results. 8) Old Mrs Brown lives ... with her children. 9) ... she didn't mean it.

She just said it without thinking. 10) Old Mrs Clark can't forget her friends and always smiles ... when she remembers them.

Example: Mr Brown has no children. Mr Brown is childless.

- 1) There are no clouds in the sky. 2) Jack has no hair.
- 3) There is no use in this job.
- 4) The valley did not have an end.
- 5) Mrs Loveday didn't have any hope.
- 6) The last leaf has fallen down from the tree. 7) There were no stars in the sky that night.

R

Example: It is not important. It is unimportant.

- 1) The boy's manners are not pleasant.
- 2) Jack is not able to do it.
- 3) That was not a usual job. 4) Mr Flint is not a successful businessman.
- 5) Jane's clothes are stylish.
- 6) Helen is not a selfish girl.
- 7) Bob is not sure of our success. 8) Theirs was not an official visit.



Focus

Описать то, что человек сделал, можно, используя разные времена. Если известно, КОГДА, а часто и ГДЕ произошло действие в прошлом,

и оно непосредственно не связано с настоящим, употребляется past simple.

We went to the USA last year. (Известно, когда и где мы были.)

Если говорящему не важно, когда действие произошло, а важен его результат, который связан с настоящим моментом, используется present perfect.

I have read the book. (Книга прочитана, я знаю, о чём она.)

| Past simple | Present perfect |
|---|--|
| l wrote a letter yesterday. (Известно когда.) | I have written a letter. (Важен результат: письмо написано.) |
| Bob broke my cup two days ago. (Известно когда.) | Bob has broken my cup. (Важен результат: чашка разбита.) |

69

Step Thre

15) Bob says he never (be) here.

6 Complete the dialogues and act them out.

Yes, I have.

1) — Have you seen this film?

— Yes, — When ...?

— Yes,? — When ...? —

E x a m p l e: — Have you bought the dictionary?

When did you buy it?I bought it three days ago.

2) — Has your brother rung up granny?

70

7

```
3) — Have they been to Paris?
  — Yes, ....
  — When ...?
  — ... .
4) — Have the children found their pet?
  - Yes, ....
  — When ...?
                                                                  71
5) — Have you begun your French classes?
  - Yes, ....
  — When ...?
6) — Has she had lunch yet?
  — Yes, ....
  — When ...?
  — ....
7) — Have Mary and John finished their homework?
  — Yes, ....
  — When …?
8) — Has Bobby played the piano?
  - Yes, ....
  — When ...?
  — ... .
Learn how to pronounce and use the new words. Listen, (4) (22), and re-
                                                                            口))
peat.
             A.
kind [kamd] — вид, сорт, тип,
                                  probably ['probəbli] — воз-
разновидность
                                  онжом
kind of — вроде бы (разг.)
                                  vocabulary [vəˈkæbjʊləri] —
popular ['popjulə] — попу-
                                  словарь, словарный запас
лярный
                                  science ['saiəns] — наука
culture ['kʌltʃə] — культура
                                  scientist ['saiəntist] — учё-
true [tru:] — правдивый, пра-
                                  ный
вильный,
           настоящий, ис-
                                  scientific [ˌsaɪən'tɪfɪk] — науч-
                                  ный
тинный
truly ['tru:li] — правдиво,
                                  technology [tek'npləcki]
действительно
                                  техника, технология
probable ['probəbl] — воз-
                                  voice [vois] — голос
можный
                                  air [eə] — воздух
```

kind: different kinds of food, a good kind of job. What kind of dog is that? It is a rottweiler ['rptvaile]. He is the kind of boy who is always fighting. There are no notes of any kind on the table.

kind of: He is kind of unhappy. He looked kind of angry.

popular: a popular song, a popular sportsman; to be popular

with sb. This hotel is popular with the tourists. culture: modern culture, Russian culture, the cultures of Eastern countries. They are people of different cultures.

true: a true story, a true answer, a true friend. Is it true that Jennifer is a child prodigy? His book gives a true picture of life in South Africa.

truly: I truly believe all her words. Roy loved Jane truly. **probable:** a probable result. This is probable but I don't think it

will happen. probably: I'll probably telephone you this evening. vocabulary: Shakespeare's vocabulary, a poor vocabulary. John has a vocabulary of about ten thousand words. science: Biology, Chemistry and Physics are sciences. Susan is a

science teacher. He works in the field of science. scientist: D. I. Mendeleev was a great scientist. scientific: a scientific fact, scientific instruments. technology: a college of science and technology, information

voice: a deep voice, a pleasant voice. Fred spoke in a quiet voice. fresh: fresh flowers, fresh water, fresh vegetables. You are looking fresh this morning. The swimming pool has fresh water in it, not sea water. air: high in the air, in the open air. Mrs Reynolds went out into

technology. Science and technology develop in each country.

in other words: English is very important for your future job, in other words, you should begin learning it really well.

8 Complete the sentences using the new words.

the street to get some fresh air.

1) A. S. Pushkin had more than 20,000 words in his v.... 2) My

doctor says I must spend a lot of time in the open a.... 3) You're

my friend, my only and t... friend. 4) Frank is very busy this week. I am not sure but p... he will find some free time and visit us. 5) What k... of pupil is Helen? 6) M. V. Lomonosov was a great Russian s.... 7) V. V. Vernadsky's s... works are well known

abroad. 8) The new teacher is very p... with children. 9) Our nurse

always speaks in a very quiet v.... 10) On the 6th of June people bring f... flowers to the monument to A. S. Pushkin in Pushkinskaya Square. 11) Valya is very much interested in s... and t.... 12) If you are looking for c..., then Paris is the place for you.

9 A. Read the text and say where people use English internationally. **Different Kinds of English**

Part I

In the 16th century the people who lived in Europe did not know English. They couldn't understand English words. Only those who lived on the island called Great Britain, spoke English. English was useless for the people of the continent. In those years Latin, French, German and Italian were popular and widely known. Four hundred years later the speakers of English travelled into every corner of the globe carrying their language and culture with them. Today English is more important than any other language has ever been. It has become the language of the planet, the first truly global language. Of all the world's languages it is

probably the richest in vocabulary. Now it is the language of technology and science, business and sport. English is the official language of the Olympics, the official voice of the air and of the sea. People use English as the first language in English-speaking countries such as Britain, the USA, Canada, Australia and New

Zealand. It has become the second language in countries like India, Nigeria [narˈʤɪəriə] and Singapore [sɪŋəˈpɔ:]. Then there is English as a foreign language. People teach and learn English as a foreign language in Europe and Asia, in Africa and South America, in other words, all over the world. But English is not the same everywhere. Several kinds of English have appeared. They are American English, Canadian English, Australian English, etc. People who live in Britain speak British English.

- 10 A. Read out of the text "Different Kinds of English" sentences that mean the same as the sentences below.
 - 1) At that time Europeans did not speak English. 2) Only the British spoke this language.
 - 3) People who lived in other European countries could not use this language.

B. Listen, (23), and read the text again after it.

73

Φ

Step

口))

- 4) English-speaking people brought their language to every part of the world.
- 5) English may have the largest number of words of all the languages. 6) People use English in air and sea navigation.
- 7) English is different in all the countries where they speak it.
- 8) A few types of English have developed.

B. Say what you have learned about English. Follow the plan.

- 1. English in the 16th century. 2. English today:
 - a) English as a global language; b) English as the first or the second language; c) English as a foreign language.
- 3. Different kinds of English.

Do It on Your Own

11 Paraphrase the sentences. Use adverbs. Example: Mrs Ross leads a happy life. She lives happily.

- 1) John is a slow reader.
- 2) They sing this song in a different way.
- 3) Jim is free to speak as he likes. (Jim can speak...)
- 4) Barbara always wears stylish dresses. (She dresses...) 5) Jack always gives me a warm smile when we meet. (He always
- 6) Mary has a strong dislike for cats.
- 7) Tom knows a clever way of doing this job.
- 8) Put on your warm clothes, the weather is very cold today.
- 9) When Jane was speaking, her words sounded sad. 10) The news gave me a great surprise.
- 12 Express the same in English.

greets me...)

Настоящий друг, правдивый ответ, разные культуры, какой-то сердитый, свежие фрукты, большой запас слов, тёплый воздух, возможный ответ, наука и техника, популярный

среди туристов, высокий голос, великий учёный, любые виды (разновидности), научные факты.

Step Four

Do It Together

- 1 Listen, ┫ (24), and say why they are not doing it.
- 1) Colin, 2) Jenny, 3) Ruth, 4) Chris, 5) Polly, 6) Sue
- 2 Roy and his friends like learning foreign languages. They know the lan-

guage of the country where they are from and the language of the country

where they are living now. Say what languages they can speak.

3 Complete the dialogues. Choose the answers from part B.

Tom speaks Italian and he can also speak Spanish. 1) Patrick comes from Germany. Now he is in China.

2) Barbara comes from Norway. Now she is in Japan. 3) Oleg comes from Russia. Now he is in Canada. 4) Victor comes from France. Now he is in Holland. 5) Kate comes from Mexico. Now she is in Portugal. 6) Zara comes from Australia. Now she is in Vietnam. 7) Sue comes from Ireland. Now she is in New Zealand. 8) Peter comes from Belarus. Now he is in the USA.

Example: Tom comes from Italy. He is in Spain now.

1) Do you want some lunch?

have?

es?

very new.

for Sue?

your computer?

flying to America?

2) What are you going to

3) Can you draw pictures with

4) Your brother's car looks

6) Where are the sandwich-

7) What about our present

8) Do you know when Doris is

1 no wonder ['wʌndə] — неудивительно

5) Is it cold this morning?

bought it.

out.

some.

done it.

sorry.

it.

vet.

a) No wonder¹. He has just

b) Yes, it is. I've just been

c) No, thanks. I've just had

d) No, I haven't spoken to her

e) I don't know. I have never

g) I've eaten them all. I'm

h) Sorry, I haven't bought

f) I haven't decided yet.

75

3

0 ш

0

口))

say tell

У следующих неправильных глаголов вторая и третья формы совпадают.

I II III
burn burnt burnt

dream dreamed/ dreamt [dremt]
hear heard heard

hear heard heard learned/ learnt learnt let let let

 learnt
 learnt

 let
 let

 make
 made
 made

 mean
 meant [ment]
 meant [ment]

 put
 put
 put

said [sed]

told

spell spelt spelt
stand stood stood
strike struck struck
understand understood understood
win won won

4 Work in pairs. Ask questions and answer them. Begin your questions with

said [sed]

 \boldsymbol{B} .

told

"Have you ever...?"

Example: Have you ever written a poem? — Yes, I have.

L X a III p T e. Trave you ever writter a poem: — Tes, Triav

- A.
- 1) burn your hand 1) tell lies
- 2) win chess games 2) learn French
- 3) make a cake
 4) send e-mails
 3) hear "The Beatles"
 4) spell your name
- 4) send e-mails
 5) spend your holidays abroad
 4) spell your name in English
- 6) buy a pet 5) dream of going to China or
- 7) teach any school subject Japan
 8) grow vegetables 6) fall off a bike
- 8) grow vegetables 6) fall off a bike 9) speak German 7) read poems by John Keats
- 9) speak German 7) read poems by John Keats 10) write a poem 8) buy brown rice or brown
 - 8) buy brown rice or bro sugar
 - 9) build a house 10) eat mangos

Make up dialogues and act them out. Example: to drive (my new car)/last Sunday A: I have already driven my new car. B: When did you drive it? A: I drove my car last Sunday. 1) to cook (lunch)/an hour ago 2) to begin reading (a Harry Potter book)/last week 77 3) to leave (for Moscow)/two weeks ago 4) to choose (a present)/a minute ago 5) to break (my mother's cup)/vesterday 6) to ride (my new bike)/last weekend 7) to speak (to our new teacher)/last Friday 8) to send (a birthday card to mum)/three days ago 9) to learn (the poem by heart)/yesterday 10) to do (exercise ten)/last evening 11) to make (a dress)/a few days ago **Focus** Обратите внимание на то, что с указателями this morning, this afternoon могут употребляться и present perfect, и past simple. Выбор того или иного времени зависит не от того, когда конкретно происходило действие, а от того, когда о нём говорят. Ср.: 1) I have seen him this morning. (Разговор происходит до 12:00, утро ещё не закончилось.) I saw him this morning. (Разговор происходит после 12:00, утро уже закончилось.) 2) I've spoken to Alan this afternoon. (Разговор происходит до 18:00.) I spoke to Alan this afternoon. (Разговор происходит вечером после 18:00.) 6 What is Sarah saying? Example: to send an e-mail this morning (16:00) I sent an e-mail this morning. to meet John this afternoon (15:30) I've met John this afternoon. 1) to play volleyball this morning (13:00) 2) to watch an interesting film this morning (11:00) 3) to call my friend this morning (15:00) 4) to see Anna this afternoon (21:00) 5) to speak to Dr Ross this afternoon (14:00)

Vocabulary

(pl vocabularies)

1) all the words in a language (словарный состав)

English has one of the largest vocabularies.

- 2) a list of words in a lesson or a book (список слов)
- How many words are there in your textbook vocabulary?
- 3) all the words that a person¹ knows (запас слов) A young child has a small vocabulary.

Dictionary

(pl dictionaries)

a book that gives words from A to Z with their meanings I have bought two English-Russian dictionaries.

7 Fill in the missing words.

- 1) Doctors use a special ... when they talk about medicine.
- 2) Where did you buy this ... for children? 3) The baby's ... is very small, he knows only ten words. 4) There is a ... at the end of the book. You can find all the difficult words there. 5) What famous ... of the English language do you know? 6) This book is a German-English 7) Pupils write the new English words in their 8) When you open a ... , you can learn a lot about words.
- 8 A. Read the text and say why it can be difficult for American and British people to understand each other.

Different Kinds of English

Part II

As you already know people speak different kinds of English. For example, we can hear different forms of English in different parts of the English-speaking world. Those people who live in India speak Indian English, in Canada — Canadian English, in Australia — Australian English. British English and American English are the most important kinds of the English language because people use them very widely. And they are not really that much different. If you meet people who come from the USA,



¹ a person ['pз:sn] — человек, личность

you can say that their language sounds different from British English. You will be able to say that these people are not British. But you won't probably have much difficulty in understanding what they say.

It is so because the vocabulary and grammar of the language is very much the same. But some things have different names in Britain and America. Compare these.

| Russian word | American word | British word | | | | |
|--|---------------------------|-------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| осень | fall | autumn | | | | |
| лифт | elevator [ˈelɪveɪtə] | lift | | | | |
| грузовик | truck | lorry | | | | |
| кинофильм | movie [ˈmuːvi] | film | | | | |
| кинотеатр | movies | cinema | | | | |
| конфета | candy [ˈkændi] | sweet | | | | |
| печенье | cookies [ˈkʊkɪz] | biscuits ['biskits] | | | | |
| бензин | gas(oline) [ˈgæsəli:n] | petrol ['petrəl] | | | | |
| жареный картофель (тонкими ломтиками) | (French) fries [fraiz] | chips | | | | |
| кран (водопровод- ный) | faucet ['fɔ:sɪt] | tap | | | | |
| плита | stove | cooker | | | | |
| свитер | sweater | jumper | | | | |
| мусор | garbage [ˈgaːbɪʤ] | rubbish | | | | |
| мусорный ящик/бак | garbage can | dustbin [ˈdʌstbɪn] | | | | |
| тротуар | sidewalk [ˈsaɪdwɔ:k] | pavement ['peɪvmənt] | | | | |
| автостоянка | parking lot | car park | | | | |
| аптека | drugstore ['drʌgstɔ:] | chemist's [ˈkemɪsts] | | | | |
| брюки | pants | trousers | | | | |

79

The Robinsons live in Britain and the Wilsons live in the US. Their lives are very much the same. They do the same things every day. Read the text about the Robinsons and describe the Wilsons' day. Use American English.

The Robinsons are a British family. They live in Manchester. This is their usual weekday. They get up at 6:30. Tom Robinson goes to the bathroom. He turns on the *tap*, has a shower, cleans his teeth and puts on his favourite clothes — a dark blue *jumper* and old grey *trousers*. Tom is a *lorry* driver so he doesn't wear any good clothes to work.

While Tom is dressing, his wife Mary gets his breakfast ready.

While Tom is dressing, his wife Mary gets his breakfast ready. She cooks eggs on the *cooker*. Tom likes a big breakfast before he goes to work. Mary doesn't eat much for breakfast — just a cup of coffee and some *biscuits* after which she puts her favourite

sweet in her mouth and washes up.
After breakfast Tom kisses his wife and leaves home at seven. He has a busy day in front of him. He drives his *lorry* to the *petrol* station and starts off. He has lunch at 12:30. He usually has fish and *chips* in a small café and drinks two mugs of the strongest

tea. Tom works until five and returns home at six. In the morning Mary cleans the flat, takes the *rubbish* out and puts it in the *dustbin* standing on the street *pavement*. Then she goes to the *chemist's* where she works. She also comes back home at six.

Tom and Mary like to go out in the evening. They get their old Ford out of the *car park* and drive to the *cinema*. They are fond of watching new *films* and never miss them.

Do It on Your Own

10 Write the names of these things in American English and British English.











Fou









8.















11 Develop these situations.

Example: Peter has learned 15 English words.

Peter has learned 15 English words. He learned them because he wanted to be ready for his English class.

- 1) Jane has burnt the apple pie.
- 2) Samantha has put on her new dress.
- 3) Little Willy has spelt his name correctly.
- 4) Tina has made no mistakes in the test.
- 5) The teacher has let me miss his class.
- 6) We have already heard the news. 7) Boris has not told us the truth.
- 8) James has won the game.

Do It Together

1 Listen, 🕢 (26), about Daniel Radcliffe and complete the sentences.

Daniel Radcliffe

- 1) Daniel was born
- 2) Daniel's pets are
- 3) Daniel loves playing
- 4) In future he would like to become
- 5) His favourite subject at school is



You have had a bad day. Your elder sister or brother is not happy about it. Make up a dialogue. Be ready to act it out in class.

Example: not to clean the floors/to forget

- Why haven't you cleaned the floors?
- Sorry, I forgot, etc.
- 1) not to eat the porridge/not to be hungry
- 2) not to finish your homework/my friend, ring up
- 3) not to clean your room/to be busy
- 4) not to ring the doctor up/to forget his telephone number
- 5) not to do the shopping/to leave the money at home
- 6) not to watch the new film/to miss it
- 7) not to learn the poem/to find it too difficult
- 8) not to win the race/not to be ready for it
- 9) not to make your chocolate cake/to have no butter at home



Focus

Present perfect часто употребляется

1) с такими обстоятельствами, как

before [bɪˈfɔː] — прежде; **lately** [ˈleɪtli] — недавно, в последнее время; **several** [ˈsev(ə)rəl] **times** — несколько раз; **many times** — много раз; **the first time** — в первый раз.

I have never eaten a mango before. I haven't seen him lately.



Jack has been to Norway several times. We have heard this melody many times.

It's the first time I've come to this disco.

2) в предложениях с именами прилагательными в превосходной степени типа:

It's the best film I have ever seen.

She is the most beautiful lady Jack has ever seen.

3 A. Complete the sentences. Use present perfect.

been seen

I have (never) eaten played bought met read visited lately. before. several times.

B. It's Martin's first visit to America. Say what he has done for the first time.

Example: He has never been to New York before.

It's the first time he has been to New York.

1) He has never done [dʌn] the Metropolitan Museum before.

- 2) He has never played baseball before.
- 3) He has never swum in the ocean before.
- 4) He has never seen skyscrapers before.
- 5) He has never eaten American food before.
- 6) He has never driven in a limo¹ before.
- 7) He has never enjoyed a Broadway musical
- before.
- 8) He has never stayed in the Carlton Hotel before.
- 9) He has never listened to concerts in Carnegie Hall.
- 10) He has never travelled about the country so much.



¹ a limo ['lɪməυ] = a limousine

Example: The temperature is +35 °C today. It's the hottest temperature we ever (have).

It's the hottest temperature we have ever had.

- 1) I really love this film. It is (interesting/see).
- 2) I don't think you should read this book. It is (boring/read).
- 3) Your marks are terrible. They are (bad/have).
- 4) Jane, you look wonderful today. You are wearing a very nice hat. It is (good/see). 5) This year winter is so cold. It is (cold/have).
- 6) The basketball player is so big. He is (tall/see).
- 7) The children are really enjoying their holidays. They are (good/have).
- 8) The result of the game is terrible. It is (bad/see).
- 5 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words. Listen, 🚳 (27), and repeat.

fast [fa:st] - 1) adi быстрый; 2) adv быстро **prefer** [pri'f3:] — предпочитать follow ['foləu] — 1) следовать (за); 2) понимать following ['fpləuɪŋ] — следующий regular ['regjulə] — регулярный

A.

such [sʌtʃ] — такой perfect ['pз:fikt] — совершенный need [ni:d] — нуждаться wait [weit] — ждать pronunciation [prəˌnʌnsiˈeɪʃn] произношение maybe — может быть, возонжом

rich [rɪtʃ] — богатый

口))

B.

regularly ['regjoləli] — pery-

лярно

fast: 1) a fast train, a fast car. My watch is fast. 2) to talk fast, to walk fast, to drive fast, to think fast. I can't run very fast. prefer (preferred): to prefer tea to coffee, to prefer (to do) doing something. John preferred riding a bike to walking. follow: 1) to follow some rule, to follow a person. Tuesday follows Monday. I was sure that someone was following me. 2) to follow a speech, to follow a film. Do you follow what I am saying?

| | ular meetings, to meet regularly. He regularly | | | | | |
|---|--|---|--|--|--|--|
| visits his granny | an, a rich country. Alan Parson is a rich Eng- | | | | | |
| lishman. | an, a rich country. Alan rarson is a rich Eng- | | | | | |
| $\mathbf{the}\ \mathbf{rich} = \mathbf{rich}\ \mathbf{pe}$ | eople | | | | | |
| such: such an ir people, such fast perfect: a perfect is absolutely per | theresting book, such a boring film, such rich cars. It is such sweet tea that I can't drink it. It day, a perfect lady, perfect results. This room rfect for our meeting. <i>Practice makes perfect</i> something regularly, you will learn to do it per- | 8 | | | | |
| | ter, to need food, to need to go to school. You'll | | | | | |
| | need some warm clothes for the winter. You can stay longer if | | | | | |
| you need to. | | | | | | |
| wait: to wait for and wait until Bo | the teacher, to wait for the bus. Let's sit down obby comes here. | | | | | |
| pronunciation: the right pronunciation. Her pronunciation is | | | | | | |
| getting better. | | | | | | |
| maybe: Maybe I'll come too. There were maybe fifteen people | | | | | | |
| there. Maybe it will snow tonight. | | | | | | |
| in fact: I thought Betty was in her room but in fact she was in the garden. | | | | | | |
| to grow up: She is really starting to grow up now. She is not a child anymore. | | | | | | |
| at the beginning stand anything. | : At the beginning of the story we didn't under- At the beginning I didn't think about becoming | | | | | |
| a journalist. | | | | | | |
| to come with practice: You'll learn to do it easily, it comes with practice. | | | | | | |
| practice. | | | | | | |
| A. Name three thin | gs that can be: | | | | | |
| 1) popular | 5) rich | | | | | |
| 2) fresh | 6) probable | | | | | |
| 3) true 4) regular | 7) scientific 8) perfect | | | | | |
| 4) regular | 8) perfect | | | | | |
| B. Paraphrase using | the new words. | | | | | |
| 1) to like tea more than coffee, 2) to walk behind somebody, 3) to train sounds, 4) probably, 5) a car that is not slow, 6) a man who is not poor, 7) to come every day | | | | | | |

following: On the following day. Read the following carefully.

C. Find the opposites.

 $\begin{array}{ll} \operatorname{early} - \dots & \operatorname{slow} - \dots \\ \operatorname{seldom} - \dots & \operatorname{good} - \dots \end{array}$

modern — ... to stay — ...



Focus

После слова such может идти:

 а) имя существительное в единственном числе с неопределённым артиклем:

Alex is such a good pupil.

It is such an interesting book!

б) имя существительное во множественном числе без артикля:

I like such pupils.

в) имя существительное неисчисляемое без артикля:

It is such terrible weather we're having today.

Such juice is very tasty.

Write what these people say.

E x a m p l e: wash/dirty clothes
I have never washed such dirty clothes.







1.



1) hear/terrible music, 2) meet/a beautiful girl, 3) read/a boring book, 4) eat/a tasty cake, 5) see/a sad film, 6) drive/a bad car, 7) write/a long letter, 8) watch/interesting shows, 9) play difficult games

A. Read the dialogue and say how Masha, Boris and Sergey are going to use English in the future.

Interview

Interviewer: I know that you are all learning English. Do you find it difficult?

Masha: No, not really. I think language learning is fun. And I can learn it fast.

Sergey: I find it rather difficult. Especially grammar. My teacher says I make a lot of grammar mistakes. In fact I prefer reading.

Interviewer: And what about you, Boris?

Boris: I liked learning English at the

beginning, but now it is getting more difficult and less fun. There are so many things to remember — words, grammar, spelling, pronunciation. English has such a rich vocabulary... And I don't always understand my teacher.



Interviewer: I see. And what do you do to learn English successfully? Have you got any special rules that you follow?

Masha: I try to do my homework regularly. It helps me to practise English when there are no classes. I know that "practice means perfect". I also watch films in English and listen to CDs.

Boris: I listen to English songs. Eminem is my favourite singer. English songs help me to understand English better. I have learned some of them and sing them with my friends.

Sergey: I do a lot of exercises, watch American films in English and read adapted books. That's what I like most of all.

Interviewer: And may I ask you how you are planning to use English in the future?

Sergey: I'd like to learn to speak English well because I want to visit many countries of the world and meet different people. I hope I'll be able to speak English to them.

Boris: I'd like to be a computer programmer and I'll need English for my future job. A lot of modern computer programmes are in English.

Masha: I don't know how I am going to use my English yet. I just like learning it. Maybe I'll learn another language — French, Spanish or Italian. Maybe I'll become a linguist. I can't wait to grow up and go to university.

B. Listen, (28), read the dialogue in groups of four after it and then act

9 A. How would you answer the interviewer's questions?

the dialogue out.

- 1) Do you find language learning difficult?
- 2) What do you do to learn English successfully?



- 3) How are you planning to use English in the future? 4) Why are you learning English? B. Put your answers together and explain to an imaginary English speaker why and how you are learning English. Social English
- 10 A. Learn to show your surprise in English.
 - Oh! Dear me! (Боже мой!) Really? (Неужели?)
 - Is that so? (Так ли это? Неужели?) You don't say so! (Не может быть!)

It's incredible! (Невероятно!)

- Fancy that! (Подумайте только!) Well, I never... (Вот так так!)
- I am surprised. (Я удивлён.) I am shocked. (Я потрясён.)
- B. Read out the sentences and give your reaction to them.
- 1) Nowadays about 400 million people speak English.
- 2) Nowadays English is second only to Chinese in the number of people who speak it.
- 3) About 300 million people living in more than 60 countries speak English as a second language.
- 4) There are about 5,000 languages and dialects in the world today. About 845 come from India.
- 5) People use 65 different alphabets today.
- 6) There are no languages without the [a] sound.
- 7) There were only 30,000 words in Old English. Some people say there are about 600,000 words in Modern English.
- 8) Modern English has the largest vocabulary in the world.
- 11 Act out dialogues, exchange the news and show your surprise.

 - E x a m p l e: I hear that we are going on a school trip next weekend.
 - Is that so? Where are we going? To St Petersburg. - Fancy that!

>

What Do You Think?

- 12 Which of these proverbs are true? Explain why.
 - 1) Slow but sure wins the race.
 - 2) Practice makes perfect.
 - 3) Never do things by halves.

Do It on Your Own

90

- 13 Complete these sentences. Use prepositions where necessary.
 - 1) Ruth asked me to wait ... her.
 - 2) ... the beginning of the lesson we practised ... writing.
 - 3) "I know the way," Mr Hillar said. "Follow ... me."
 - 4) ... the following day the weather was hot and sunny.
 - 5) Who does the book belong ...?
 - 6) Rose says she prefers travelling ... air ... travelling ... train.
 - 7) His answer was really good, ... fact it was perfect.
 - 8) Peter Pan was a boy who didn't want to grow

14 Article or no article?

people can buy such ... things. 5) Fanny is such ... beautiful woman. 6) Where do they buy such ... tasty ice cream? 7) We're such ... good friends! 8) I've never done such ... difficult work in my life. 9) I hate such ... rainy weather. 10) There was such ... deep snow in the forest that the travellers couldn't walk.

1) Such ... people also live near us. 2) Those were such ... short stories. 3) Bob has seen such ... interesting film. 4) Only rich

Check Your Progress

15 Write TEST 2 (Workbook 1, pp. 75-78) and check your results.

| Tasks | 1 | 2 | 3 | | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | Total |
|----------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|-------|
| | | | а | b | | | | | | |
| Maximum result | 9 | 5 | 6 | 4 | 8 | 4 | 6 | 10 | 14 | 66 |
| Your result | | | | | | | | | | |



Living Things Around Us

Step One

Do It Together

- 1 Listen, ┫ (29), and complete the sentences.
 - 1) Darwin was born on
 - 2) His father was
 - 3) Darwin became a medical student at
 - 4) He got interested in geology and
 - 5) The expedition on the "Beagle" went to the coasts of
 - 6) Darwin died in
 - 7) He was buried in
- 2 Look at the pictures, listen, 🚳 (30), and learn the names of these birds.



1) a (sea)gull



2) a pigeon ['pɪʤən]



Step One





口))





3) a swallow ['swplau]



4) a nightingale [ˈnaɪtɪŋgeɪl]



5) an ostrich ['pstrif]



6) an owl [aul]



7) a parrot ['pærət]



11) a swan [swɒn]



9) a magpie ['mægpaɪ]

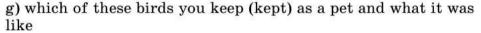


10) a crow [krəu]



12) a blackbird [ˈblækbɜːd]

- Say: a) which of these birds you have seen and when you saw them b) which of the birds you have never seen
- c) which birds you have never heard about
- d) what you know about these birds
- · where they live
 - · what colour they are
 - · whether they are big/small, strong/weak, etc · which of them can sing/talk
- e) what other birds you know
- f) which of these birds you may keep as a pet



Focus

ях необходимо использование определённого артикля. Ср.: There are two armchairs in the room. An old lady is sitting in one of them, the other (armchair) is free. (Другой из двух упомянутых.)

Известные вам слова other и others могут употребляться в таких ситуациях, когда речь идёт об определённых людях или предметах. В этих случа-

Wendy has got two dresses, one is red, the other (dress) is blue. (Другое из

имеющихся двух.) Vera has been to Canada but she has never been to the other Englishspeaking countries. (Другие; ограниченное число англоговорящих стран,

за исключением Канады.) There were five children in front of the house. One of them was a girl, the other four (the others) were boys. (Все другие члены этой группы, кроме одной девочки.)

Обратите внимание, что сочетание the other + существительное во мн. ч. часто заменяется в речи сочетанием the others.

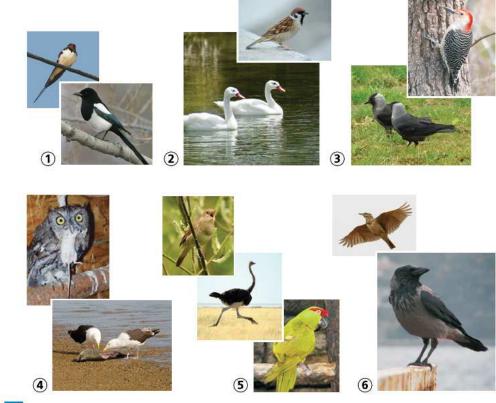
the other boys = the others

This apple is mine and the other is yours. (На тарелке два яблока.)

This apple is mine and the others are yours.

(На тарелке несколько яблок.)

93



4 What are they?

- 1) This is a magpie. What is the name of the other bird?
 - 2) The sparrow is grey. What is the colour of the other birds?
 - 3) The woodpecker is in the tree. Where are the other birds?
 - 4) The seagulls are eating fish. What food is the other bird eating?
- 5) The nightingale is singing. What are the other birds doing?
- 6) The lark is a small bird. The other bird is big. What is it?

5 Complete the sentences. Use the words from the box.

another, other, the other, others, the others

- 1) Yesterday morning I met two girls. One was Matilda, but I didn't know ... girl.
- Where are the children? John went to play football, ... went with him.

- 3) There are three cakes on the plate. I'd like to have one and you may take
- 4) There are two cakes on the plate. I'd like to have one and you may take
- 5) This pencil belongs to Betty, ... pencil is mine.
- 6) I am still¹ hungry. May I have ... sandwich, please?
- 7) Some people like it when it is hot, ... like it when it is not.
- 8) Jane's house is on ... side of the street.
- 9) Some books are better than
- 10) We must all know this. I'll call Ann. Will you tell ...?
- 11) Come ... day.
- 12) I wanted to spend our holidays in California but Roland had ... ideas.
- 13) Not now. We'll talk about it some ... time.
- 14) One of the children was Rob, what was ... boy's name? 15) One boy fell off his chair and all ... laughed.



Focus

Для того чтобы подчеркнуть, что то или иное действие началось в прошлом, происходило какое-то время в прошлом и продолжается в настоящем, в английском языке используют настоящее перфектное продолженное время (present perfect progressive):

have/has been + Ving

I have been living in Moscow for 10 years. — Я живу в Москве 10 лет.

(Действие началось 10 лет тому назад, все эти 10 лет я жила в Москве и сейчас тоже живу в этом городе.)

Mary has been playing the piano for 40 minutes. — Мэри играет на пианино 40 минут.

We have been learning English for four years. — Мы учим английский 4 года.

Помимо указателя for в подобных предложениях часто употребляется since — c (какого-то времени), а также all (day, night, etc).

Sue has been talking on the phone since 2 o'clock. — Сью разговаривает по телефону с двух часов.

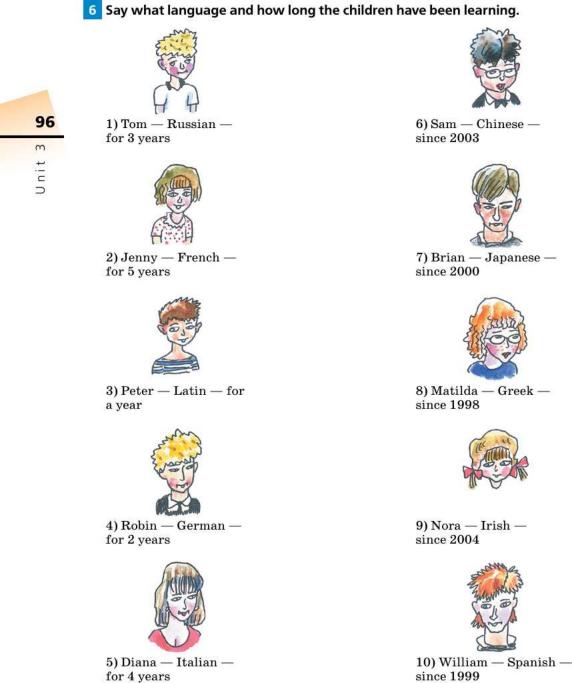
It has been raining since morning. — Дождь идёт с утра.

They have been working in the garden all the morning. — Они работают в саду всё утро.

95 O 0

Step

¹ still — все ещё



Example: It began raining at 3 p.m. in Rome. It has been raining for 5 hours. 1) It began raining at 9 a.m. in Bonn. 2) It began raining at 2 p.m. in Berlin. 97 3) It began raining at 11 a.m. in Paris. 4) It began raining at 7 p.m. in Madrid. 0 5) It began raining at noon (12 o'clock) Step in Moscow. 6) It began raining at 10 a.m. in St Petersburg. 7) It began raining at 4 p.m. in Oslo. 8) It began raining at 6 p.m. in Vienna.

It is autumn and it often rains in many cities of Europe. Say how long it has

been raining. It is 8 p.m. in each of these cities.

8 Complete the sentences.

Example: I am tired. I (do) the room for three hours already. I have been doing the room for three hours already.

- 1) Jenny (draw) since morning.
- 2) Sam (work) there for fifteen years.
- 3) Chris (sleep) for ten hours already.

9) It began raining at 8 a.m. in London.

- 4) Rose and Alan (learn) Spanish for 2 years. 5) It (snow) since morning.
- 6) The children (play) tennis for forty minutes. 7) The Willers (live) in Leeds all these years.
- 8) Granny (cook) all the morning.

10) Miss King (teach) since 1987.

- 9) Ruth (read) for two hours.
- 9 A. Read the text and say what new information you found in it. Choose the right item in the sentences following the text.

Language of Birds

The song of birds is one of the most wonderful sounds. Probably the best singers are the lark and the nightingale. Sometimes when we are out in the country, we hear birds making some sounds and we may think they are telling one another something. The fact is that birds have their own language, just as many other animals do but their language is different from people's language. We use words and people must know these words, they should learn them. Birds don't learn their language. They are able to sing, "to talk" because they can make sounds and noises. It is an instinct with them. Let's take a chick from its parents so that it can't hear the sounds they make. When the chick grows up, it is able to make the same sounds as its parents. But birds can't LEARN how to sing and how to speak, they can't learn "other languages". Some birds like parrots, crows, jackdaws¹ are talented imitators. They imitate the speech of people and other animals. A lot of birds can learn other birds' songs. For example, if a canary [kəˈneəri] grows up with a nightingale, it can learn to sing like a nightingale. But this imitation is not a real language. Birds do not talk as we do.

- a) Birds have their own language.
 b) Birds don't have their own language.
 - c) Maybe birds have their own language.
- 2. a) Birds have a language that is different from the languages people speak.
 - b) Birds' language is not different, it is the same. They speak as people do.
 - c) Birds' language is more difficult than the language of people.
- 3. a) A chick can't make the same sounds as its parents can.b) A chick can make the same sounds as its parents can.c) A chick can make the same sounds as its parents can if it lives with them.
- 4. a) Birds can learn other "languages" and understand them.b) Birds can learn other "languages" without understanding them.
 - c) Birds can learn only other birds' languages.

¹ a jackdaw [ˈʤækdɔ:] — галка

c) Birds talk but not as we do. B. Listen, (31), and read the text again after it. 口() 99 Do It on Your Own

a) Birds do not talk. b) Birds talk as we do.

10 Write what birds they are.

- 1) A small bird that can sing better than any other. It usually sings at night, but it can sing in daytime too.
 - 2) It is easy to teach these birds that live in South Africa, Australia and South America some words that people use.
 - 3) A bird larger than a sparrow but smaller than a crow. It is usually grey or dark-blue and grey, sometimes white or brown. Often lives in cities.
 - 4) A large black and white bird that lives near the sea and has a loud voice. 5) A bird which is black-and-white and which often takes to its
 - nest¹ small bright things. 6) A small brown singing bird that lives in the field, has its nest
 - in the grass and usually sings early in the morning.
 - 7) A bird with a long narrow beak which can make holes² in trees. 8) A large beautiful white or sometimes black bird bigger than a
 - duck, with a long neck that lives on rivers and lakes. 9) A night bird with large eyes that eats mice and other small animals.
- 11 What questions can you ask these people?

Example: Mr Harry Parson has been writing a book for eleven months.

- Have you finished your book yet?
- 1) Simon has been looking for a job for five months.
- 2) Ann and Alan have been trying to do their homework for hours.
- 3) Alice has been hoping to buy a new mobile.

¹ a nest [nest] — гнездо ² a hole [həʊl] — дыра

- 4) Ruby King has been thinking of visiting New Zealand for years.
 - 5) Roland Scott has been trying to make a successful film for years.
- 6) Bobby has been hoping to find his favourite dog for weeks.
- 7) Nora has been thinking of going to a disco for weeks.
- 8) Alice has been waiting for her friend since morning.

Step Two

100

m

Unit

Do It Together

- 1 Listen, 🚱 (32), and complete the sentences.
 - The nightingale lives in England from
 The nightingale never visits
 - 3) The nightingale sings at night and4) The nightingale's song is beautiful but its
 - body
 5) The nightingale builds its home
- 2 Match the sentences in the two columns.
 - A.
 - 1) I've been reading the book for five minutes.
 - 2) I haven't eaten for two days.3) I haven't slept at all this
 - a) I haven't slept at all this night.
 - 4) I've been sitting at home doing nothing all day.
 - 5) I haven't had a drink since this morning.
 - 6) I have been writing my book for two years.
 - 7) I haven't seen John for a long time.
 - 8) I have been waiting for Alice for an hour.

- B.
- at all.
 b) I'm terribly tired.
- c) I'm very thirsty.
- d) And I already know it is very boring.

a) My life is not interesting

- e) I would like to know where he is.
- f) I think I'll finish it soon.
- g) I'm very hungry.
- h) When will she come?



Has he been watching TV since morning? — Yes, he has. Has she been writing postcards for two hours? — No, she hasn't.

Has she been writing postcards for two hours? — No, she hasn't.

Has the dog been sleeping for three hours? — Yes, it has.

Have you been sending e-mails since morning? — Yes, I have. (Yes, we have.)

Have they been talking for an hour? — No, they haven't.

How long have you been staying in this hotel? — Since Thursday.

Since when has it been raining outside? — Since 4 p.m.

Work in pairs. Ask since when (how long) they have been doing it. Your partner will answer the question.



1) Mary and Kate/since afternoon



2) The children/since last year



3) Cousin Fred/since yesterday



101

×

4) The Robinsons/since morning



5) Julia/since she came home from school



6) The tourists/since ten in the morning



7) Jack/since 4 o'clock



9) The teachers/ since the end of school



8) The parents/since 5 p.m.



10) It/since yesterday evening

5 How long have they been doing it?

Example: John/write/ 0.5 hour John has been writing for half an hour.

- 1) Victor/work/1.5 hours
- 2) Robert/watch TV/2.5 hours
- 3) Mr Cook/fish/3 hours
- 4) Jenny/lie in the sun/0.5 hour
- 5) The boys/run/0.5 hour
- 6) The Wenders/drive/1.5 hours
- 7) The children/play football/an hour
- 8) Jim /read a book/0.5 hour
- 9) I/wait for you/an hour

1) медведь, 2) корова, 3) паук, 4) крыса, 5) мотылёк, 6) лиса, 7) улитка, 8) олень, 9) муравей, 10) журавль, 11) кенгуру, 12) лягушка a) a fox, b) an ant, c) a frog, d) a spider, e) a deer, f) a kangaroo, g) a rat, h) a moth, i) a bear, j) a snail, k) a cow, l) a crane 103 Look at the pictures. Listen, (33), and learn the names of these animals. Step Two 口)) 1) a lion ['laɪən] 2) an elephant ['elifənt]



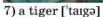
5) a rabbit [ˈræbɪt]

6 Match the names of the animals in English and Russian.



6) a hare [heə]







8) a wolf [wulf]



9) a monkey [ˈmʌŋki]

- 8 Say which of these animals are wild and which of them are domestic1.
 - 1) a deer, 2) a kangaroo, 3) a sheep, 4) a pig, 5) an elephant,
 - 6) a horse, 7) a rabbit, 8) a hare, 9) a tiger, 10) a dog, 11) a squirrel, 12) a wolf, 13) a monkey, 14) a lion
- 9 A. Read the text "Helen Beatrix Potter" and match the paragraphs with their titles. There are four paragraphs but five titles. There is one extra title.



- a) Great Interests
- b) Beginning of a Writer
- c) School Friends

- d) Early Years
- e) Story for a Sick Boy

¹ domestic [dəˈmestik] — домашние

Helen Beatrix Potter

- 1) Helen Beatrix ['beətriks] Potter was born on 6th July 1866 in London. She was an only daughter of rather rich parents. She did not go to school but had classes at home.
- 2) Beatrix was fond of two things. They were animals and drawing. She had a lot of small pets at home: a family of snails, mice, a rabbit, bats¹ and a hedgehog. From early childhood she did hundreds of drawings of plants and animals and learned to do it.
- a rabbit, bats¹ and a hedgehog. From early childhood she did hundreds of drawings of plants and animals and learned to do it very well. She often illustrated her letters to child friends with little animal drawings and told them stories about these animals.

3) One day in 1893 she wrote to a little boy called Noel Moor. The boy was ill and she wanted to please him and humour him². The letter began with the words: "I don't know what to write to you so I shall tell you a story about four little rabbits whose names

were Flopsy, Mopsy, Cottontail and Peter." In this letter she told the story of Peter Rabbit and illustrated it with lovely little drawings.

4) Eight years later Beatrix Potter remembered the letter and the story and wrote her now famous children's book "The Tale of Peter Rabbit". The book was very successful and Beatrix Potter

became a professional children's writer. For many years now

- children in England and other countries have enjoyed her stories about mice, kittens³, ducks, squirrels, hedgehogs and rabbits. And her perfect illustrations make her books even better.
- B. Listen, (34), and read the text again after it.
- 10 Read the text about Beatrix Potter again and say as much as you can about:
 - her family
 - · her interests

3 a kitten — котёнок.

her storiesher first famous book

звеселить его

口()

 $^{^1}$ a bat — летучая мышь 2 to please him and humour ['hju:mə] him — $s\partial$.: порадовать и развеселить его

Do It on Your Own

- 2) Jenny (live) in this place since 1960. She knows everybody

here.

left.

isn't very good.

(1.5 hours)

(autumn)

(0.5 hour)

(May)

(3 days)

13 Write the same in English.

they haven't finished it yet.

They are coming back soon.

I think I'll take them for a walk.

1) How long you (do) these exercises?

2) Since when you (paint) the picture?

3) How long she (wait) for her lunch?

5) How long you (stay) at this hotel?

столетия, три с половиной минуты.

4) Since when they (grow) these plants?

106

m

1) I (wait) for you for an hour and a half. Why have you come so late?

3) Peter (learn) Spanish for half a year only. His pronunciation

4) Rose and her husband (build) their garage all the summer and

5) My parents (travel) about the USA for two weeks already.

6) The children (watch) television for an hour and a half already.

7) Ruth (wash up) since after dinner. There are few dirty dishes

12 Work in pairs. Complete these questions and let your partner answer them.

Полчаса, полтора часа, пол-яблока, полтора банана, полтора месяца, две с половиной недели, первая (вторая) половина

- 11 Complete these sentences and translate them into Russian.

Step Three

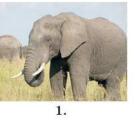
Do It Together

1 Five people are speaking about animals that live in Africa. Look at the pictures, listen, (35), and say what animals they mean. There are two extra pictures.







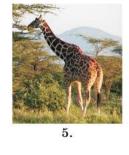
















2 Say how long these people have been doing it.





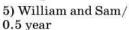


3) Molly and Kate/2.5 hours



4) Jenny and Alice/ 2.5 weeks







6) Frank/ since Sunday







8) Mr Robinson/since yesterday



Focus

1. В предложениях с использованием времени **present perfect progres- sive** момент, когда действие началось в прошлом, может быть обозначен придаточным предложением.

Jane has been watching TV since <u>mum came home</u>. Colin has been playing on the computer since he returned.

В этом случае в придаточных предложениях всегда употребляется past simple.

2. Периоды времени, в течение которых длится действие, могут быть обозначены следующими словосочетаниями: all day, all night, all the afternoon или for a long time.

Helen has been talking on the phone all the afternoon. Bob has been working on the computer all day.

3 Say how long they have been using these things.

E x a m p l e: Mr Stubbs /to drive his car/he/to buy it/in 1999 Mr Stubbs has been driving his car since he bought it in 1999.

- 1) Julia/to wear her shoes/she/to buy them/last summer
- 2) Boris/to read this book/he/to borrow it/from the library

7) They/to use the garage/they/to build it
8) Jim/to drink from this cup/I/to give it to him two years ago

Focus

3) Chris/to take pictures/his father/to give him the camera 4) Brian and Mary/to live in this house/they/to come to town

6) Bill/to ride his bike/he/to get it as a birthday present

Reflexive pronouns, **(36)** (Возвратные местоимения)

5) The Davidsons/to play the piano/1999

У всех личных местоимений в английском языке есть соответствующие возвратные местоимения. Они имеют окончания -self в единственном

числе и -selves во множественном числе. Возвратные местоимения Личные местоимения myself [mar'self] уои (ты) yourself [jo:'self] himself [hɪmˈself] > сам(а) себя he herself [h3:'self] she itself [it'self] it ourselves [auəˈselvz] we сами себя yourselves [jo:'selvz] уои (вы)

1) The boy found himself in a big room. — Мальчик очутился в большой комнате.
2) Have you made the cake yourself? — Вы сами приготовили торт?

themselves [ðəmˈselvz]

2) Have you made the cake yourself? — Вы сами приготовили торт? 3) He never speaks of himself. — Он никогда не говорит о себе.

3) Не never speaks of himself. — Он никогда не говорит о себе. Возвратные местоимения, как правило, не употребляются при следующих глаголах: to wash, to dress, to bathe [beɪð] (купаться), to shave (бриться), to hide (прятаться).

Она плохо себя чувствует. — She feels ill.

4 What does it mean in Russian?

they

Ср. также:

- 1) Look at yourself! Your face is dirty. 2) Pam dressed and went
 - downstairs to the kitchen. 3) They never speak of themselves. 4) Mary always does the shopping herself. 5) Bob is very small.

He can't open the door himself. 6) I don't know anything about it

(T))

4) He got up early, washed ... and shaved ... and at 7 o'clock he

6) Jenny looked at ... and saw that her skirt and blouse were not

8) The day was hot and the girls decided to bathe ... in the river. 9) Look at this new chair. We've made it Isn't it beautiful?

6 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words. Listen, 🚳 (37), and re-

1) I can't tell you what to do, you must decide for

3) The child was ill yesterday. How is she feeling ... today?

2) Nobody helped him. He did everything

5) I think that they understand everything

7) Don't go to the shops, I'll buy everything

10) They don't buy bread in the shop. They make it

was ready to leave the house.

A.

- m

- 110
- Unit

- - - include [mˈklu:d] включать including [inˈklu:din] — вклю-

peat.

very clean.

- чая species ['spi:(i:z] — образец,
 - образцы discover [dis'knvə] — обнару-
 - жить, открыть
 - discovery [disˈkʌv(ə)ri] открытие **air** [eə] — воздух
 - soil [sɔil] почва, земля root [ru:t] — корень

 - 1 a play [plei] пьеса
 - B. include: to include sth/sb, to include on the list. The class of
- the list?

insect ['msekt] — насекомое move [mu:v] — двигаться common ['kpmən] — 1) об-

口))

- щий; 2) часто встречающийearth [3:θ] (also Earth) —
- земной Земля (планета)
- desert ['dezət] пустыня breathe [bri:ð] — дышать support [sə'po:t] - 1) поддер-
- живать; 2) содержать

ся, обычный

земля,

1)

twenty includes seven girls. Did you include me when you made

species of birds in the National Park. discover: to discover sth. To discover means to find out something for the first time. Christopher Columbus discovered America in 1492. Fleming discovered penicillin [penisilin]. discovery: to make a discovery. Mr Johnson made his discovery 111 when he was very young. air: cold air, fresh air, in the air, by air = by plane. I'd like to Φ open the window, I need some air. The boy jumped into the air. Step Thre soil: to grow in (the) soil. Plants grow well in good soil. root: A root is the part of a plant or a tree that is in the soil. insect: An insect is a small animal with six legs. Ants and bees are insects. move: to move fast (slowly), to move in = to move into a flat (a house), to move something. It is cold in the room, move your chair nearer the fireplace. We're going to move in next week. common: 1) a common language, to have sth in common. The English and Americans have a common language. I have a lot in common with my brother. 2) Double-deckers are common in London. Rabbits and foxes are common in Britain. earth: The Earth is a planet where we live. The Moon goes round the Earth. The austronauts returned successfully from the Moon to the Earth. desert: the Gobi Desert, the Sahara Desert. There are a lot of deserts in Africa. breathe: to breathe in, to breathe out. Fish cannot breathe out of water. Breathe in deeply. support: to support a family, to support children, to support a plan. Her father supported her till she was twenty five. 7 Complete the sentences with your new words (see Ex. 6). 1) I know that my friends will always s... me. 2) This place looks like a d..., there are no plants growing here. 3) Bees and ants, as people think, are i... that live in big groups. 4) Doctors say it is very good to b... sea 5) Rabbits and hares look nearly the same, but in fact they are two different s.... 6) The 15th century was the time of great geographical d...s. 7) My favourite subjects i... biology and chemistry. 8) Cactuses ['kæktəsis] can grow in dry s..., practically without any water. 9) At home I d... all my fami-

including: I have seen all his films including the last.

species (pl. species): a tropical species. There are more than 120

ly waiting for me. 10) It's not always easy for me to find a c... language with Paul, I think he is rather stupid. 11) The Browns are planning to m... from Glasgow to Edinburgh. 12) How many oceans are there on the E...? 13) Plants get their food and water from the s... with the help of r...s. 14) Planes are a lot heavier than a... but they can fly. **Focus** Обратите внимание на то, что для обозначения понятия земля в английском языке используется несколько слов: **Earth** — Земля (*планета*) land — земля (*суша*) soil — земля (почва) The planet Earth is so beautiful! After two weeks on the sea we saw land at last. She put some soil in the pot and planted a rose. 8 Which word to use — Earth, land or soil? 1) Mrs Willer prepared the ... for the flowers. 2) Is the ... nearer to the Moon than Mars is? 3) The children planted the tulips in the 4) "Water, water and water everywhere. When shall we see ...?" 5) Mr Parson is interested in the geography of the 6) The captain wanted to walk on dry 7) She planted the for-

years, I got a job on

get-me-nots in wet sandy 8) After working at sea for eight

9 A. Read the text and say in what way animals are different from plants.

112

Animals and Plants

As scientists say, an animal is any living thing (including people) that is not a plant. No one knows how many different species of wild plants and animals there are on our planet. People discover hundreds of new kinds every year. In what way are animals

of wild plants and animals there are on our planet. People discover hundreds of new kinds every year. In what way are animals different from plants? This question is not always easy to answer. Animals and plants get their food differently: animals eat plants or other animals, while plants get their food from the air and soil with the help of their leaves and roots. But we know that

and soil with the help of their leaves and roots. But we know that some plants catch and "eat" insects. Also animals can move about while plants grow in the same place but there are some plants that can travel and some animals that never leave their place. As you see plants and animals have very much in common.

Do It on Your Own 1) The boys are tired. They have been playing football ... an hour and a half. 2) Alex has been talking on the phone ... I came home. 3) The telephone has been ringing ... about a minute. Why doesn't someone answer it? 4) Mr Williams has been writing his book ... half a year and hasn't finished it yet. 5) People have been working on this ... the beginning of the century. 6) John has been washing his car ... nine o'clock this morning. 7) Sarah has been waiting for her sister ... a long time.

113

口()

11 Complete the sentences. Use for or since.

port life on the planet.

that live on our planet?

do we use them?

4) Why is it not always true?

B. Listen, (38), and read the text again after it.

1) What do living things include?

10 Answer the guestions about the text "Animals and Plants".

3) In what way are plants and animals different?

Is that true about animals? Can you give examples?

There are more than 300,000 different species of plants on earth. Some plants grow very tall and live a very long life. Other plants are so tiny that you can see them only through a microscope [markrəskəup]. The same is true about animals. You can find plants and animals in the oceans and deserts, in mountains and in cold tundra ['tʌndrə] plains. When people first learned to cultivate ['kaltiveit] plants and domesticate [də'mestikeit] animals,

our civilization [sivəlar zei[n] began. We can't live without them. Plants are able to use sunlight to build themselves up. They use carbon dioxide¹ and "breathe out" life-giving oxygen². They sup-

2) Can we say that we have studied all the plants and animals

5) The text says that some plants are tiny and some are very big.

6) Why can't we live without plants and animals? In what ways

¹ carbon dioxide [ˌka:bən daɪˈɒksaɪd] — углекислый газ ² oxygen ['pksiф(ə)n] — кислород

114

E x a m p l e: No one helps Danny to grow vegetables.

Danny grows vegetables himself.

- 1) No one helps me to do my homework. 2) No one helps Anna to learn Spanish. 3) No one helps the children to decorate their classroom. 4) No one helps Mr and Mrs Page to plant the trees.
- 5) No one helps Jason to move the desks in the office. 6) No one helps us to make porridge. 7) No one helps them to make photos for their album. 8) No one helps the bee to make honey.

Step Four

Do It Together

- 1 Listen, 🚳 (39), and choose the right item.
 - a) Sally is fifteen this year.
 b) Sally is going to be fifteen this year.
 - 2. a) Sally is thinking about her career.
 - b) Sally is not thinking about her career.
 - 3. a) Sally goes to the park to watch birds all by herself. b) Sally goes to the park to watch birds with her friends.
 - 4. a) Sally knows a lot of species of birds living all over the world.
 - b) Sally knows a lot of species of birds living in Britain.
 - 5. a) Sally loves reading books about plants and animals. b) Sally loves reading books about birds and animals.
 - 6. a) Sally's teacher gives her books about animals to read.
 - b) Sally's teachers give her books about animals to read.
 - 7. a) Bears and wolves do not live in Great Britain anymore. b) There are a lot of bears and wolves in Britain now.
 - 8. a) Sally gave a talk on British birds.
 - b) Sally gave a talk on British animals.
 - 9. a) Sally is going to university to do biology.b) Sally is thinking about going to university to do biology.
- 2 Think of the beginnings to these sentences. Use present perfect progressive.

Example: ... since I bought it.

I have been watching this video since I bought it.

□(

- 1) ... since I came back. since I began learning English.
- 3) ... since we moved in.
- 4) ... since I made it.
- 5) ... since my mother showed me how to do it.
- 6) ... since my friends gave it to me. 7) ... since my parents bought it for me.
- 8) ... since my cousin left.



Focus

1. Для того чтобы описать действие, которое началось в прошлом и длится до сих пор, глаголами, которые не употребляются в продолженных временах (to know, to have, to be, to want, to love), употребляется present perfect.

I have been here for 3 days already. — Я здесь уже три дня. How long have you been here? — Сколько времени ты находишься здесь?

I have had this camera for years. — Этот фотоаппарат у меня уже давно (много лет).

She has known Boris all her life. — Она знает Бориса всю жизнь. I have always wanted to visit London. — Мне всегда хотелось побывать в Лондоне.

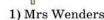
I have always loved you. — Я всегда тебя любил(а).

2. В некоторых случаях время present perfect progressive употребляется, чтобы описать действия, которые начались в прошлом и только что закончились, при этом налицо признаки данных действий.

- a) Why are you so dirty?
 - We have been playing football.
- b) Why is the kitchen so messy, Rose?
 - I've been cooking.

3 How long have they been doing these jobs?











115

3) Jim







4) William, Bob

1) since 2001, 2) for ten years, 3) since he finished school, 4) for three years, 5) since 1998, 6) for a year and a half

How long have they had these?







1) The Croppers









3) Megan











6) Alice

1) for three years, 2) for years, 3) since last summer, 4) since his parents bought it, 5) since last month, 6) for two weeks

| 5 | A. How long have they known them? | | | | | | |
|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| | Example: Dr Cross — Mr Harrison — since 2000 Dr Cross has known Mr Harrison since 2000. | | | | | | |
| | 1) Rose Smith — John Parker — for 6 months 2) Simon — Alan Willer — all his life 3) Mrs Parson — Roland Scott — since she visited Britain 4) Roger Gordon — Tony Dobson — for two years 5) Miss Hook — Fanny Devlin — for years 6) Walter — Sam — for 3 days | | | | | | |
| | B. Say what they have always wanted to do. | | | | | | |
| | 1) Roy — to become a journalist 2) Sarah — to learn Spanish 3) Ann — to visit Canada 4) Tom — to write a poem 5) David and Chris — to go to the Great Lakes 6) The Lovedays — to move in a new house | | | | | | |
| 6 | Match the sentences in the two colun | nns. | | | | | |
| | Why are your hands red and green? Why are you so tired? Why are your shoes wet? Why are your eyes red? Why is the kitchen so | a) I have been working all day. b) I have been running all the way. c) I have been out in the street for 3 hours. d) I have been cooking dinner. e) I have been watering the | | | | | |
| | messy? 6) Why are you breathing so | flowers. f) I have been sunbathing. | | | | | |
| | fast? 7) Why is your face so red? 8) Why are you so cold? | g) I have been crying. h) I have been painting a picture. | | | | | |
| 7 A. Read the text and match the paragraphs with their titles. There's one extra title. | | | | | | | |
| | a) Common Birds d) Common Insects b) Common Animals e) National Symbols c) Common Plants | | | | | | |

Flora and Fauna¹ of the British Isles

1) The warm and wet climate ['klaımıt] of Great Britain is very good for plants. That's why the country looks like a big beautiful garden.

118

Centuries ago there were a lot of forests on the British Isles, but now you can find big forests only in a few parts of the country—the north of Scotland and the south-east and south-west of England. The most common trees in England are oaks, beeches and elms while Scotland has a lot of pines, firs and birches.

2) The fauna, or animal life, on the British Isles is like in the northwest of Europe. Many larger animals such as bears and wolves don't live on the British Isles anymore, but there are a lot of smaller animals: foxes, rabbits, hares and hedgehogs. Deer live in the forests of Scotland and England. There are also different kinds of fish, snakes, lizards, frogs, butterflies and dragonflies.

3) More than two hundred species of birds live on the British Isles and about two hundred kinds are visitors of the place. Many of them are songbirds, in spring the land rings with their singing. The most common are blackbirds and sparrows. A lot of waterbirds — swans, ducks, geese and gulls — live on the lakes and rivers and on the sea coasts of Great Britain.









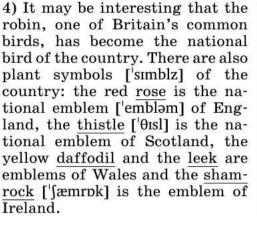


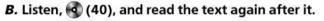


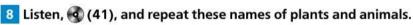




¹ flora [ˈflɔ:rə] and fauna [ˈfɔ:nə] — флора и фауна









Ireland.



a grizzly bear



a flamingo







a crocodile





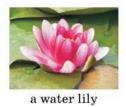




口))

口))









9 Speak about the fauna in these countries.

| Country | Common animals | Common birds | | |
|------------|--|---|--|--|
| The USA | black bears grizzly ['grızli] bears deer mountain sheep mountain goats rabbits hares foxes opossums [ə'pɒsəmz] grey and red squirrels snakes crocodiles alligators ['ælıgeɪtəz] in Florida | woodpeckers owls swallows sparrows geese ducks magpies flamingos (in Florida) | | |
| Canada | brown bears black bears in the north grizzly bears polar ['pəʊlə] bears buffaloes ['bʌfələʊz] wolves coyotes ['kɔɪəʊts] deer mountain goats | Canada geese ducks owls sparrows magpies | | |

121

口())

| Country | Common animals | Common birds |
|----------------|---|--|
| Austra- lia | kangaroos [ˌkæŋgəˈruːz] buffaloes rabbits crocodiles dingoes [ˈdɪŋgəʊz] koala bears anteaters | parrots other Austra- lian birds |
| Russia | ? | ? |

10 Where do these plants grow?

10) water lilies 11) forget-me-nots

- 1) wild flowers a) in the north/south (of)... 2) firs b) on dry soil
- 3) pines c) on wet soil 4) maples¹ d) on sandy soil
- 5) oaks e) in the forest 6) birches f) in the valley 7) beeches g) high in the mountains
- 8) evergreens h) in the water 9) palms² i) everywhere
- 12) grasses 13) edelweisses

11 Listen to the song, 🕙 (42), and sing along.

I've Been Working on the Railroad

(American song)

I've been working on the railroad

All the live-long day.

I've been working on the railroad

Just to pass the time away.

Can't you hear the whistle blowing?

провести время как свистит свисток

железная дорога

весь день напролёт

¹ a maple ['meɪpl] — клён ² **a palm** [pa:m] — пальма

Rise up so early in the morn! поднимайся рано утром Can't you hear the captain shouting, как кричит капитан "Dinah, blow your horn!" подуй в свой рожок Dinah, won't you blow, Dinah, won't you blow, Dinah, won't you blow your horn, your horn? 122 Dinah, won't you blow, Dinah, won't you blow, Dinah, won't you blow your horn, your horn? Someone's in the kitchen with Dinah, Someone's in the kitchen I know! Someone's in the kitchen with Dinah Strumming on the old banjo бренчит на старом And singing: банджо Fee, fie, fiddlee-yie-o Fee, fie, fiddlee-vie o-o-o-o, Fee, fie, fiddle-yie-o Strumming on the old banjo! Do It on Your Own 12 Write what country they are symbols of.

- 13 Complete the situations. Use the verbs in brackets in the right verb forms. 1) The boys (play) football now. They (be) tired. They (play) foot
 - ball for an hour and a half. 2) Tom (begin) talking on the phone an hour ago. I think he
 - should finish. He (talk) on the phone for an hour already.
 - 3) Roy came to see the dentist at nine o'clock. It (be) 9:30 now. Roy (wait) for the doctor since 9:00 a.m.
 - 4) Colin (become) a professor in 1998. He (work) at the university since he (become) a professor.
 - 5) The Greens (move) to Canada last summer. They (live) in Canada now. They (live) in Canada for about a year.

123

Fi V

Step Five

- 1 Listen, ┫ (43), and say which sentences are true and which are false.
 - 1) Ostriches have no wings.
 - 2) Ostriches can run as fast as horses.
 - 3) Ostriches live in Asia, Africa and South America.
 - 4) Ostriches hate water because they can get themselves wet.
 - 5) Ostriches eat only plants and nothing else.
 - 6) Ostriches live only in the wild.
 - 7) Not everything that people believe about ostriches is true.







Work in pairs. Act out dialogues.

Example: — What have you been doing?

I've been eating apples.



Unit



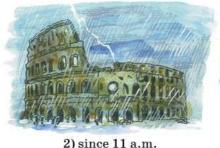
It is 9 p.m. in each of these cities. Say how long it has been raining/snowing in these cities.

Example: It has been snowing in New York since 8 p.m.

It has been snowing in New York for an hour.









3) since morning

1) since 9 a.m.

2) Since 11 a.m.







4) since 3 p.m.

5) since 4 p.m.

6) since noon

- 4 Act out the dialogues, then make your own dialogues with the words on the right and act them out too.
 - 1) I like this dress. Is it new?
 - Oh, no! I've had it for years.
 - 2) I love these jeans. Are they new?
 - Oh, no! I've had them for years.
 - 3) Your blouse is so beautiful! Is it new?
 - Oh, no! I've been wearing it for years.

bag, hat, scarf, coat, belt, umbrella

trousers, socks, sandals, pyjamas, shoes, boots, shorts

coat, raincoat, jacket, gown, scarf

Обратите внимание на различия времён present perfect и present perfect progressive.

Present Perfect

L

126

- 1) I have read the book.
- 2) He has written a letter.

(Действие произошло. Когда конкретно — не важно, налицо результат, связь с настоящим.)

11. I have flown an airplane many ti-

mes. (Действие происходило один или несколько раз за определённый период времени и до момента речи.)

Ш

I have liked such movies ever since I was a child. (Действие началось в прошлом и длится до сих пор. Действие выражено с помощью глаголов, не

употребляющихся в продолженной форме.)

IV.

практически взаимозаменяемы.

I have lived here since 2003.

He has worked at this hospital for ten years.

Present Perfect Progressive

- 1) I have been writing a book since July.
- 2) He has been writing a letter for half an hour.

(Действие началось в прошлом, продолжалось в прошлом и длится до сих пор.)

Your eyes are red. Have you been crvina? (Действие только что закончи-

лось, признаки его налицо.)

С глаголами to live, to work в предложениях с since и for оба времени I have been living here since 2003.

tal for ten years.

He has been working at this hospi-

5 Present perfect or present perfect progressive?

1) It (snow) all day. When will it stop? 2) Hi, Tom. I (see, not) you for weeks. What (you, do) all this time? 3) I (write) to them three times, but I (get, not) any answer yet. 4) Bill (be) here since the 5th of November. 5) I (meet) Mrs Gordon many times this

week. 6) Colin, you (miss) already very many classes. 7) I (phone) Diana for three hours already, but she is not at home yet. 8) It's

- 11 p.m. I (work) on the computer since six and I (finish, not) yet. 9) I always (want) to make a tour of Spain. 10) The telephone (ring) for almost a minute. Why doesn't someone answer it?

Focus

Возвратные местоимения часто употребляются после предлога **by** для того, чтобы подчеркнуть, что действие выполнено самостоятельно.

He did it all by himself. — Он сделал это абсолютно самостоятельно. She lives by herself. — Она живёт совершенно одна.

Susie and Kate made the dress all by themselves. — Сьюзи и Кейт сшили платье абсолютно самостоятельно.

- 6 Answer the questions.
 - 1) Do you usually make breakfast yourself or does your mother or somebody else do it for you? 2) Do you usually do English exercises all by yourself or does anybody help you? 3) Have you ever driven a car yourself? 4) Do you live all by yourself or with your parents? 5) Did you learn to read yourself or did anybody teach you? 6) Do people speak to themselves? Do you speak to yourself? Why does it usually happen?
- 7 A. Read these texts about flowers and say what months you associate¹ them with and why.
 - 1) The snowdrop is as white as snow and grows when snow still lies in the forests. You can try to grow snowdrops in your garden too.

 2) This month's flower is the primrose
 - 2) This month's flower is the primrose ['primrəuz]. The primrose may have many different colours: white, yellow, red, pink, orange and purple. This little flower looking like a star
 - is one of the earliest spring flowers. They are common in Europe, Asia and North America.

 3) The flower of this month is the daffodil
 - which grows and blooms early in spring. It has been a garden favourite for centuries. It has long leaves and bright yellow petals². It belongs



127

Step Fiv



² a petal ['petl] — лепесток

¹ to associate [əˈsəʊʃieɪt] — ассоциировать

to the narcissus family. In Greek mythology, Narcissus was a young man who could love nobody else but himself. So gods¹ got angry with him and turned him into a flower.

- 4) Water lilies grow in ponds and lakes. These flowers are large. Some are deep yellow, some are pinkish white and some are blue or even purple. The best-known water lily is Victoria Regia. The leaves of this plant grow over a meter and a half in diameter. Its big pink-white flowers open in the evening.
- 5) The chrysanthemum [krɪˈsænθɪməm] is one of the oldest flowers people grow. It has been grown in Japan for nearly two thousand years and is the national flower of that island country. Travellers brought it to Europe in the 17th century. This lovely flower can be white, yellow, red, purple or pink. Chrysanthemums are welcome flowers because they grow and open when there are not many other flowers around.
- 6) This sweet flower is probably everyone's favourite. Roses please us with their beauty from June to September and in England, whose emblem they are, you can sometimes see roses opening in November or even December. The most common colours are red, pink, white and yellow. If you want to say that a job or a situation includes some unpleasant things, you often say "it is not all roses".









B. What is your favourite flower? What is it like?

рорру ['pppi] — мак; lilac ['laɪlək] — сирень; pansy ['pænzi] — анютины глазки; daisy ['deɪzi] — ромашка, маргаритка; dandelion ['dændɪlaɪən] — одуванчик; carnation [kaːˈneɪʃn] — гвоздика; cornflower [ˈkɔːnflaʊə] — василёк; bluebell [ˈbluːbel] — колокольчик; tiger lily [ˈlɪli] — тигровая лилия; sunflower [ˈsʌnflaʊə] — подсолнух

¹ gods — боги

8 Learn what people say on special days in English.

Congratulations! [kən,græt[v'leɪ[nz] — Поздравляю!

Congratulations to you! — Поздравляю вас!

My heartiest congratulations to you! — Сердечно поздравляю вас!

Happy Birthday!

Поздравляю с днём рождения! Many happy returns of the day!

Best wishes for your birthday! — Наилучшие пожелания вам!

Take my best wishes! — Примите мои наилучшие пожелания! I wish you luck! — Желаю удачи!

Good luck! Всего наилучшего! All the best!

May all your dreams come true! — Пусть сбудутся все ваши мечты!

Enjoy yourself! } Желаю хорошо повеселиться!

Have fun! Have a good time! — Желаю хорошо провести время!

Have a nice day! — Хорошего тебе дня!

Happy New Year! — Счастливого Нового года! С Новым годом!

Merry Christmas! — С Рождеством!

What Do You Think?

- Which of these proverbs are true? Explain why.
 - 1) God made the country, and man made the town. 2) Actions speak louder than words.
 - 3) Little strokes fell great oaks.



Focus

1. Обратите внимание, что в ответ почти на все поздравления и пожелания обычно говорят:

The same to you. Thank you. Thanks (a lot). Thank you very much.

- 2. В ответ на поздравление с Новым годом обычно говорят "Happy New Year!".
- Happy New Year, Linda! Happy New Year, John!
- 3. Поздравляя кого-либо с другим праздником, англичане чаще всего пользуются выражением Happy + something или Greetings on... Happy Teacher's Day! — Поздравляю с Днём учителя!

129

Step

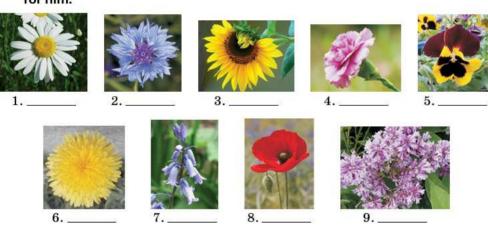
| 130 | Greetings on the Russian чества! 4. Выражения со словом пользуют только тогда, н | ay! — Поздравляю с Днём 8 Марта! Army Day! — Поздравляю с Днём защитника Оте- congratulations, а также глагол to congratulate ис- когда поздравляют кого-то с успехами и личными p: I know you've finished school. My congratulations! | | | | |
|------|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| m | 10 Complete these dialogue | s and then act them out. | | | | |
| Unit | I'm so glad you've become a student. I know it was not easy — Happy New Year, dear! —, mom! Goodbye, Fred. I wish you luck and happiness and success! — I'm going on holiday tomorrow. — Bye, George Well, John, I hear you're fifteen today. — So you're ready for the party. You look wonderful, dear. — | | | | | |
| | 11 Work in pairs, greet or co | ngratulate one another on: | | | | |
| | a) a birthday;b) Mother's Day;c) the New Year;d) Easter Day;e) Christmas; | f) St Valentine's Day; g) one of you getting a diploma; h) one of you going away on holiday; i) one of you getting a new job. | | | | |
| | Do It on Your Ow | \mathbf{n}_{\parallel} | | | | |
| | 12 Write the same in English | 1. | | | | |
| | А. Храбрый заяц, удивительные насекомые, глупый страус, умная обезьяна, ленивый медведь, белая ромашка, большой дуб, славная белочка, вечнозелёная ель, высокая сосна, тонкая берёза, голубые незабудки, маленький соловей, прекрасная сирень, яркий подсолнух, синий василёк, красная гвоздика, сильный слон, могучий лев, английские дубы. | | | | | |

Happy Holiday! — Поздравляю с праздником! Happy Mother's Day! — Поздравляю с Днём матери!

- never (see) a pheasant. 3) You (learn) English for four years! 4) I (know) Victor since I (come) to St Petersburg. 5) (See) you
- Tanya this week? When you (see) her? 6) Rose (wait) for her friend for an hour already. She (come) yet? 7) We always (want) to have a small house in the country. 8) My elder brother always

(love) animals. He has a lot of pets at home. 9) How long the children (sleep)? 10) What you (do) all afternoon? 11) I (have) this

14 The painter forgot to put the names of the flowers under the pictures. Do it for him.



Check Your Progress

watch since my birthday.

15 Write TEST 3 (Workbook 1, pp. 107—112) and check your results.

| Tasks | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | Total |
|----------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|-------|
| Maximum result | 6 | 5 | 9 | 8 | 8 | 4 | 6 | 10 | 10 | 66 |
| Your result | | | | | | | | | | |



The ABC of Ecology¹

Step One

Do It Together

- Listen, (44), and say when these people are talking.
 January, 14 February, 30 April, 2 September, 25 December, 5 October
- 2 Listen, ┫ (45), and sing along.

Green Fields

(by Terry Gilkyson, Rich Dehr, Frank Miller)

Once there were green fields kissed by the sun,

Once there were valleys where rivers used to run,

Once there was blue sky with white clouds <u>high above</u>,

Once they were part of an everlasting love.

We were the lovers who <u>strolled</u> through green fields.

однажды

когда-то текли

(字)

в вышине

бродили

вечная

¹ ecology [ɪˈkɒləʤi] — экология

| Green fields <u>are gone</u> now, <u>parched</u> by the sun, | исчезли | |
|--|--|-----------------|
| Gone from the valleys where rivers used to run, | выжженные | |
| Gone with the cold wind that swept into my heart, Gone with the lovers who let their dreams depart. Where are the green fields that we used to roam? I'll never know what made you run away. How can I keep searching when dark clouds hide the day. I only know there's nothing here for me, Nothing in this wide world left for me to see. But I'll keep on waiting till you return, I'll keep on waiting till the day you learn. You can't be happy while your heart's on the roam. You can't be happy until you bring it home. Home to the green fields and me once | проник в моё сердце упустили свою мечту когда-то гуляли заставило тебя уехать продолжать искать скрывают ничего не осталось буду продолжать ждать, till = until блуждает | 133 Step One |
| again. Focus Запомните третью форму следующих неправил blow — blew — blown [bləun] — дуть draw — drew — drawn [drɔ:n] — рисовать fly — flew — flown [fləun] — летать grow — grew — grown [grəun] — расти wear — wore — worn [wɔ:n] — носить | ьных глаголов: | |

134

- 3 Choose the right form of the verbs to complete the sentences: past simple or present perfect.
 - 1) What Nick (wear) at the party? I don't know. I (see, not) him then. 2) Look! Bob (draw) a very good picture. I like it. 3) John (fly) to Paris yesterday. 4) Jane is not in Moscow. She (fly) to St Petersburg. 5) Mrs Stubbs (grow) beautiful forget-menots in her garden last spring. 6) My little granddaughter (grow) a very big tomato. Would you like to look at it? 7) How long you (wear) this dress? I don't remember. I know that I (wear) it for years. 8) A cold wind is blowing out in the street. It (blow) since morning. 9) Have you ever (fly) a kite? 10) Mr Dixon (fly) to Canada last week. 11) How quickly these flowers (grow)!
- 4 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words. Listen,

 (46), and repeat.

12) Look, what animal your cousin (draw)!

include [m'klu:d] — включать influence ['influens] — влиять study ['stʌdi] — изучать between [bɪ'twi:n] — между (двумя) relation [rɪ'leɪʃn] — 1) отношение; 2) родственник each [i:tʃ] — каждый environment [m'vаютельтель] — окружающая среда

A.

health [helθ] — здоровье collect [kəˈlekt] — собирать population [ˌpɒpjʊˈleɪʃn] — население, популяция number [ˈпʌmbə] — 1) количество; 2) число size [saiz] — размер behaviour [bɪˈheɪvjə] — поведение nowadays [ˈnauədeiz] — в наши дни survive [səˈvaiv] — выжить

 \boldsymbol{B} .

жать

surround [səˈraund] — окру-

influence: to influence people, to influence somebody's life. His speech influenced the students. Computers have influenced the world of science a lot. study: to study to be a journalist, to study music, to study sci-

ence at school. She often goes to the library to study there. **between:** between the two streets, between you and me. The pencil lay between the books.

relation: our relations, their relations. What are the relations between these countries? In relation to sth. I have a lot (nothing) to say in relation to this problem.

(i)

surround: to surround a garden, to surround a playground. The air that surrounds us is not always good for breathing. surroundings: He was happy to be at home again in his usual sur-135 roundings. health: poor health, good health, to be in good health. My granny is rather old but she is in good health. healthy: healthy surroundings, healthy food. collect: to collect pictures, to collect dolls, to collect postcards. Some children love collecting different things. collection: a wonderful collection of books. population: the population of the city, the population of the country. What is the population of London? Tanzania's elephant population is about 55,000. number: 1) a/the number of animals, a/the number of birds. I have a number of English books at home. The number of children in our family is three. 2) 5 is a number, 397 and 78 are also numbers. size: the size of a room, the size of a vocabulary. Your flat is the same size as mine. What size shoes do you wear? — Size 36 (shoes). behaviour; bad behaviour, the pupils' behaviour, to watch animals' behaviour, problem behaviour. Ann was sick of her brother's behaviour. nowadays: A lot of people travel by air nowadays. People use computers everywhere nowadays. survive: to survive the fire, to survive in the ocean. He survived in the desert for a week on biscuits and water. 5 Say the same differently. Use the new words. Example: Jenny buys all the interesting postcards she can find. It is her hobby. Jenny collects postcards. 1) John spends a lot of time learning geography. 2) These two countries have very good contacts. 3) The science that studies how living things live in relation to each other and their environment is one of the most important sciences nowadays. 4) These days people work a lot on computers. 5) People should think a lot about the surroundings in which they live. 6) Mr Robinson de-

each: each species, each boy, to speak to each other, to know each

environment: an unhappy home environment. We should always

Φ

 \sqsubseteq 0

Step

other. We often send e-mails to each other.

think of our environment.

cided to put a high wall around the castle. 7) Why is it important for children to eat good food? 8) What is the number of people who live in London? 9) Julia has got a lot of good books at home. 10) I'd like to ask you some questions.

A. There are words that sound alike in many languages and mean the same. We call them "international" words. Read the text and find 12 international words in it.

What Is Ecology?

No living thing or group of living things can live and grow in isolation [asəˈleɪʃn]. All organisms, both plants and animals, need¹ energy to develop and all species of living things influence the lives of others. Ecology is a science. It studies how plants, animals and other living things live in relation to each other and to their environment. People have always studied living things in their natural [ˈnætʃ(ə)rəl] environment, in other words, they have always studied the air, the water, the soil and all the other things that surround a person, animal or plant. The environment can influence the growth and health of living things. Ecologists also study what happens to different species. They collect information [anfəˈmeɪʃn] about their population number, diet [ˈdaɪət], form, size and behaviour. Ecology is one of the most important sciences nowadays. It teaches us how to survive in the modern world.

- B. Listen, 🔇 (47), and read the text again after it.
- C. What is the message of the text?
- 7 A. Read the text "What Is Ecology?" again and complete the sentences.
 - 1) Ecology is a
 - 2) Ecology studies
 - 3) A natural environment is
 - 4) Ecology teaches us
 - 5) Ecologists collect information about
 - B. Answer the questions about ecology.
 - 1) Why do people so often speak about ecology nowadays? What makes ecology an important science? 2) When did people first start speaking about ecology? 3) The information of what scienc-



¹ to need sth — нуждаться в чём-то

es does ecology use? 4) What are some of the problems ecologists are trying to solve¹? 5) How can the environment influence a living thing? Can you give an example? 6) What is human ecology? What does it study? 7) What is your natural environment? Do you think it is healthy?

C. Explain why ecology has become so important in the modern world.

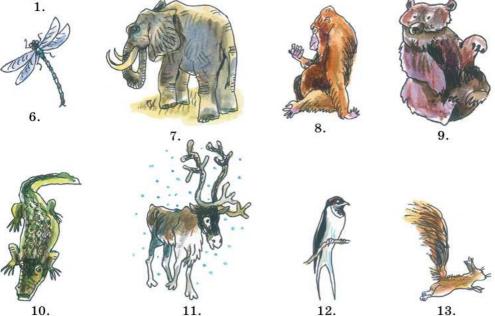
27 Explain 1911y ecology has become so important in the induction from a

natural environment. They feed on other fish, water plants and

What is their natural environment? What do they feed on? E x a m p l e: Fish. Fish live in water. Rivers, lakes, seas and oceans are their

other water organisms.

2. 3. 4. 5.



¹ to solve [splv] a problem — решить проблему

138

Как вы уже знаете, многие слова в английском языке образуются при помощи суффиксов. Познакомьтесь с некоторыми из них.

-tion collect - collection inform — information populate — population

-th

wide — width (ширина) long — length (длина) grow - growth (poct)

-ance

important - importance

-ist

science — scientist ecology - ecologist piano — pianist

-ment develop - development

9 Read the text and complete it with the derivatives of the words on the right.

Mr Fowles is a (1). He collects (2) and

(3) facts about wild birds. For example, he is interested in (4) facts related to puffins, very (5) sea birds. Mr Fowles often goes to one of the islands in the North Sea to study the (6) of puffins living there. He knows a

(8) of their wings, the number of chicks they have, the birds' (9)

lot about these birds: the (7) and

and (10). The local (11) say Mr Fowles is of great help to them.

science inform interest differ

usual



populate wide long develop grow, ecology



Focus

All, Both, Each

Слово all (всё) относится к предметам или людям численностью больше двух. Определённый артикль после него используется в тех случаях, когда речь идёт о конкретных предметах или людях.

All people want to be happy. (Имеются в виду все люди вообще.) All the pupils in my class like school parties. (Имеются в виду конкретные люди.)

В отличие от слов **both** и **all**, слово **each** (каждый) сочетается с глаголами в 3-м лице единственного числа.

Both students know this. Each student *knows* this.

All the books are new. Each of these books *is* new. (Ho: They all like rock music.)

10 Put the words *all* and *both* in the right place in the sentences.

E x a m p l e: The stories tell us about life in older times.

Both stories tell us about life in older times.

Слово **both** [$b = 0\theta$] (оба, обе) относится к предметам или людям, число которых — два. Определённый артикль после него может как употреблять-

Обратите внимание, что слова **all** и **both** в предложении употребляются: 1) после глагола *to be* (We *are both* happy. They *are all* at home now.);

2) а также после модальных глаголов и первого вспомогательного глаго-

ла. (They can both speak English. We have all come back.).

139

пe

7) My parents watch comedies and dramas.8) We can understand other people's problems.

3) The singers have come to the concert hall.4) The two brothers enjoy playing tennis.

9) Chemistry and physics are sciences.

5) These six chairs should stand around the table.

10) The children are playing in the school garden.

1) We are ready to help you if you need our help.

2) People know that they need friends.

6) The two friends are from Scotland.

11) Ann's parents are doctors.

Do It on Your Own

ся, так и не употребляться. Both children like biology.

Both the children are very young.

- 11 Complete the sentences with the new words.
 - 1) The man was in good h... because he lived in happy s...s.
 - 2) Barbara is c... money for our trip. 3) The soldiers s... the town but did not attack it. 4) People all over the world talk a lot about

e... and its problems. 5) It is difficult to s... in a desert if you have no water. 6) It is fun to watch the g... of a sunflower. 7) What's her c... of pictures like? What is its s...? 8) What subjects do they s... in the 8th form? 9) Jane says her parents i... her interests when she was very young. They taught her to like sciences. 10) How big is the p... of Moscow n...?

- 12 Fill in prepositions where necessary.
 - 1) People have always studied living things ... their natural environment. 2) How does our environment influence ... our children? 3) I don't think people living ... isolation could be happy. 4) Ecologists study what happens ... different species of birds and animals. 5) What size ... shoes do you wear? 6) What are the relations ... the two families? 7) Young people often send e-mails ... each other. 8) Mr Brown is 92 years old, but he is ... good health. 9) What's the number ... children in your family? 10) Nowadays people often travel ... air.

Step Two

Do It Together

- 1 A. Now you will hear a text, (48), about climate. Listen to the text and say which of the facts are true, false or not stated in it.
 - 1) Climate all over the world has become hotter.
 - 2) Climate is changing nowadays.
 - 3) Climate influences the life of people more than the life of plants and animals.

山)

- 4) Climate in Europe has changed recently.
- 5) Winters in Europe are colder nowadays than in the twentieth century.
- 6) Summer temperatures in Europe can be more than thirty degrees above zero.
- B. What problems can climatic changes bring to people?

¹ fill in prepositions [ˌprepəˈzɪʃnz] — вставьте предлоги

Известный вам предлог места between обозначает «между двумя объектами/субъектами». Если же количество объектов больше чем два, то употребляется предлог among [əˈmʌŋ], который переводится словами «между», «среди».

I could see a small house between the two trees.

I could see a small house among the old trees (more than two).

Запомните следующие словосочетания:

between you and me — между нами (говоря)

Between you and me, she has some problems with her best friend.

in between = between — между

She sat in between her two sons.

Только in between употребляется в конце предложения.

Kate has English at 10 a.m., science at 2 p.m. and music in between.

Look at the pictures and say where they are.



1) the children



2) Peter Sam Kate



3) the red car







6) the monkey

5) the road

142

Вам хорошо знаком английский модальный глагол must, означающий «должен, должны». Необходимость выполнения какого-либо действия или обладания каким-либо предметом можно выразить также при помощи глаголов need (to) и have (to).

Sue needs to buy herself a new pen, she has lost her old one.

Заметьте, что глаголы have и need в этом значении не являются модальными и строят вопросы и отрицания при помощи вспомогательного глагола (do, does, did).

They don't need to come until six o'clock.

They don't have to come at six.

Если нужно сказать, что человек вынужден что-то делать из-за независящих от него обстоятельств, следует использовать глагол *to have* (*to*).

We have nothing to eat, somebody has to go to the shop.

В том случае, если следует подчеркнуть, что нечто требуется кому(чему)либо, так как оно крайне необходимо для дальнейшей деятельности (существования), используется глагол to need.

Plants need light in order to survive.

Если же требуется сказать, что человеку нужно сделать что-то единожды, употребляется оборот **have got to.**

I've got to take Rex out. (Usually my father does it but now he is ill.)

3 A. Fred works for Mr Brown. Speak about Fred's duties¹. Use the word has (to).

Example: get up at six Fred has to get up at 6 a.m.







2) answer telephone calls

¹ duty (duties) — обязанность, долг



3) clean Mr Brown's clothes



4) buy books and maps in the shop



5) take Mr Brown's dog out



6) water the flowers



7) wash Mr Brown's car



8) put the letters on Mr Brown's desk

| B. And what are your usual duties? |
|--|
| Do you have to get up early? Do you have to make breakfast? Do you have to make your bed? Do you have to feed your pet(s)? Do you have to wash the plates? Do you have to do the room(s)? Do you have to go to the shops? Do you have to help any members of your family? Do you have to wash the car? Do you have to clean the floors? What other things do you have to do? |
| C. Name 3—5 things you've got to do this evening (tomorrow). |
| What do these words mean? |
| a) being with others. b) not being with others. a) a living animal or plant. |
| 2) An organism is b) a very small organ. a) the place where we live. |
| 3) Environment is |
| b) our planet. a) the study of people's behaviour and the way people, animals and plants live together. 4) Ecology is |
| b) the study of the environment and the way people, animals and plants live together. |
| a) a person who loves the natural world. 5) An ecologist is b) a scientist who studies the environment. |
| |

- a) a group of people living in the same place or plants growing in the same place. 6) Population is: b) a group of people or animals living in the same place. 145 5 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words. Listen, 🚳 (49), and repeat. A. [ˈdeɪnʤərəs] cut [kлt] — резать dangerous without [wið'aut] — без опасный nature ['neɪtʃə] — природа **pour** [рэ:] — лить, сливать natural [ˈnætʃ(ə)rəl] — приfactory [ˈfæktri] — фабрика родный, естественный **power** ['pauə] — сила, мощь; pollute [pəˈluːt] — загрязнять власть pollution [pəˈlu:ſn] — загрязpowerful ['pauəfl] — силь
 - danger ['demcgə] опасность электростанция

 В.

 cut (cut, cut): to cut an apple, to cut bread. I'm going to cut the cake now. To cut down forests.

 without: without food or water, without air. I can't make soup

нение

waste [weist] — отходы

dump [dлmp] — свалка

the environment.

raining.

ный, мощный; обладающий

power station ['pauə stersn] —

большой властью

- without: without food or water, without air. I can't make soup without potatoes. Without doing sth. They left without saying goodbye.

 nature: beautiful nature, Mother Nature. I would like to visit the Far East to enjoy its nature.
- the Far East to enjoy its nature.

 natural: natural gas, natural talent. A river is a natural waterway, but a canal [kəˈnæl] is not. It is natural to smile when you are happy.

 pollute: to pollute the water (air, soil). People mustn't pollute
- pollution: water pollution, air pollution. Where does air pollution in the cities come from?
 waste: Where do you put waste? Things that we throw away are waste.
 waste of time: It's a waste of time to water the garden when it is

口()

Winston Churchill was a powerful man.

Look at the pairs of words. In each pair there is a word you know. Read the sentences below and guess what the other word in each pair means.

to influence — influence
dump — to dump
waste — to waste
diet — to diet
relation — to relate
environment — environmental
pollute — polluted
polluted — unpolluted

1) Television has a strong influence on people.
2) People often dump waste in the forests.
3) Don't waste your time, do something useful.
4) Would you like some cake, Jane? — No, thanks, I am dieting.

5) Ecology and biology relate (to each other).

¹ **rubbish** ['rʌbɪʃ] — мусор; *зд*.: мусорная (*свалка*)

7) The water here is polluted and dangerous to drink.8) The rivers in this part of the country are unpolluted.

town rubbish1 dump.

juice.

146

dump: a large dump, a town dump. Take all these things to the

danger: a big danger, a danger to small children, to be in danger, to be out of danger. This is a place where children can play with-

dangerous: a dangerous animal, a dangerous plant, a dangerous

pour: to pour coffee into a cup, to pour water into a pot, to pour toxic waste into rivers and seas. Sit down and I'll pour you some

factory: a big factory. There are very few factories in this town.

power: electric power, a lot of power, to have power, to do everything in one's power. He did everything in his power to help me.

powerful: a powerful car, a powerful president. They say Sir

6) Nowadays we have a lot of ecological environmental problems.

power station: There are a lot of power stations in Russia.

out danger. The red colour usually means danger.

sport. Air pollution is a dangerous thing.

At the Ford factory, they make cars.

7 A. Read the text "Our Environment" and find in it equivalents of the words and word combinations after it.

Our Environment

clean water to drink and to wash with, air to breathe and healthy food to eat. We can't live without plants and animals. They help to make the soil, they clean the water and air, and they give us all our food. The world is our home and we want to see it clean and beautiful.

The environment is all the things we need to be able to live —

At the same time we take from nature as much as we can. We cut down forests and build farms, houses, roads and factories on the land. While doing it we pollute the environment. We make a lot of waste some of which is toxic. We dump domestic and indus-

trial waste in the country and pour toxic waste into our rivers,

Cars and factories, plants¹ and power stations pollute the air and make it dangerous to breathe. People have to think about all

ходов

11) выжить

7) мы производим массу от-

3) формировать почву 8) мы сбрасываем бытовые и 4) столько, сколько можем промышленные отходы 5) мы вырубаем леса 9) сливаем ядовитые отходы 6) мы загрязняем окружаю-10) опасный для дыхания

these ecological problems if they want to survive.

B. Listen, (50), and read the text again after it. C. What are the most serious ecological problems in the place where you

8 In how many ways can you complete these sentences?

1) People can't live without

seas and oceans.

щую среду

live?

1) чтобы мы могли жить

2) воздух, чтобы дышать

2) People need to make our planet

3) We would like to see our rivers and lakes

4) It is dangerous to

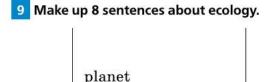
5) There are a lot of things we can take from nature:

6) We pollute the environment when we

7) People should always remember that ¹ a plant — a factory that makes cars, machines, etc. 147

≥

(I)



country air rivers, lakes and seas Our food forests people

water

should be

В тексте "Our Environment" и упражнениях после него вам встретились сочетания с инфинитивом типа: water to drink, air to breathe, food to eat.

unpolluted and clean to breathe. rich in birds and animals. clean and safe to drink.

healthy and happy.

clean and not dan-

powerful and happy

gerous to bathe in.

healthy to eat. safe1 to live on.

to live in.



148

Focus

Во всех этих случаях инфинитив поясняет, уточняет имя существительное и является его определением. Подобные предложения часто используются в современном английском языке и могут вызывать некоторые трудности при переводе. Ср.: water to drink — вода для питья (чтобы пить) air to breathe — воздух для дыхания (чтобы дышать)

food to eat — продукты, предназначенные для еды (чтобы есть)

10 Put the statements below in the right categories.

your country green. Turn² the rivers into dumps.

Don'ts Cut down trees, which make our air clean.

Build factories on river banks.

Feed animals in cold seasons.

Dos

Plant more trees to make

¹ safe — безопасный

² to turn [tз:n] — *зд*.: превращать

Pour toxic waste into the rivers and lakes. Dump old cars in forests. Burn toxic waste. Clean rivers and lakes. Be careful with farm waste. Use rivers for washing cars. 149 Use fewer cars. Make Clean Air laws. Take lorries out of city or town centres. Pay big money if you're a polluter. Make laws to control pollution. 11 Say what is pollution and why it can be dangerous. Do It on Your Own 12 Use between or among. 1) Julia couldn't choose ... two dresses. 2) We spent last summer ... friends in Canada. 3) Elephants are ... the largest animals in the world. 4) The new American singer is popular ... young people. 5) I don't like Paul very much, but that's ... you and me. 6) The revolver lay ... the two boxes. 7) The tents were situated ... the high trees. 8) There is a bridge ... the island and the bank of the river. 9) I had English and Geography classes and lunch ... them. 10) You can choose ... cucumber salad and tomato salad. 13 Complete the text using the new words. Everyone knows that life in the modern world has become rather

Help animals to survive.

Everyone knows that life in the modern world has become rather $\frac{d}{d}$. In big cities there are a lot of $\frac{d}{d}$ s and cars that $\frac{d}{d}$ the air. The water is $\frac{d}{d}$ too because factories and plants $\frac{d}{d}$ their $\frac{d}{d}$ into the rivers, lakes and seas. In the country the $\frac{d}{d}$ can be also $\frac{d}{d}$. People $\frac{d}{d}$ the industrial and domestic $\frac{d}{d}$ everywhere: in the forests, fields, near the rivers and lakes. The food people eat is not always $\frac{d}{d}$. All these are serious $\frac{d}{d}$ problems and we must solve them soon.

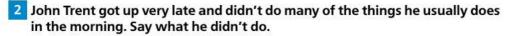
4

Do It Together

1 Listen to the story of dinosaurs1, 🚱 (51), and say which of the facts below are true and which are false.

Dinosaurs — Very Big Lizards²

- 1) People have never seen dinosaurs alive³.
- 2) All dinosaurs ate plants.
- 3) Plant-eating dinosaurs could be as tall as 8 metres.
- 4) Tyrannosaurus⁴ killed other animals to eat.
- 5) They found dinosaur bones only in Antarctica.
- 6) Scientists know about 30 different species of dinosaurs.
- 7) Scientists don't know why dinosaurs died out.



Example: John didn't do morning exercises. John left the house without doing morning exercises.

- 1) John didn't make his bed.
- 2) He didn't take a shower.
- 3) He didn't take his dog out. 4) John didn't have breakfast.
- 5) He didn't drink his usual cup of tea.
- 6) He didn't help his mother to wash the plates.
- 7) He didn't take his lunch with him.
- 8) He didn't say goodbye to his granny. 9) He didn't kiss his mother goodbye.





¹ a dinosaur ['daməsə:] — динозавр

² a lizard [ˈlɪzəd] — ящерица ³ alive [əˈlaɪv] — живые

⁴ a tyrannosaurus [tɪˌrænəˈsɔ:rəs] — тираннозавр

7) a large building with machines that give electricity [I,lek trisiti] 8) good and useful for your health 4 A. Read the text and match its paragraphs with the titles. There are 6 titles but only 5 paragraphs. One title is extra. a) Land without Trees b) No Air to Breathe c) Dangerous Waters

1) the place in which people live and work

together in relation to each other

2) a scientist who studies the environment

and the way plants, animals and people live

3) to make air, water and soil too dirty and

Match the two columns.

dangerous for people 4) useless materials

ple collect waste

and the seas

d) Toxic Food

d) environment 5) a place usually outside a town where peoe) healthy 6) the world with all living things, the land f) power station

h) dump

a) waste

b) pollute

c) nature

g) ecologist

151

e) Problems Important for Everyone f) No Food for Animals 1) The word *environment* means what is around us. People who live in big industrial centres, cities and towns live in a town environment. For others their environment is the countryside².

Everybody who lives in towns or in the country breathes air, drinks water, uses soil which should be clean. But are they really

clean? 2) The water in the oceans, seas, and rivers has become polluted in many places. If people drink this water, they can get ill or even die. People use oceans and seas as big dumps and pour industrial

¹ outside — вне, за пределами

² countryside ['kʌntrɪsaid] — сельская местность

and domestic waste into them. And so fish become toxic. It is very dangerous for people to eat such fish. Water birds leave places with toxic water. A lot of trees on the coast die, too.

- 3) The food we eat is not always healthy as fruit and vegetables can grow on polluted soil and become dangerous too. The meat we get from sheep and cows can be bad for our health if these sheep and cows eat grass that grows on polluted land.
- 4) People cut down trees and many birds and animals can't have homes in their usual places and they begin dying out. If the situation doesn't change, soon we are going to live in a very different world a world without a number of species that we know now.
- 5) Nowadays people feel that it is more difficult to breathe: in big cities the air has become badly polluted. Most of the pollution comes from cars and buses. Old people and little children feel bad and get ill because of the polluted air.

B. Listen, (52), and read the text again after it.



Focus

В английском языке существует конструкция **used to** [ˈju:st tu:], используемая в повествовании о событиях, которые случались в прошлом, особенно если нужно подчеркнуть, что больше они не происходят.

I don't skate now, but I used to skate a lot when I was a child. — Сейчас я не катаюсь на коньках, но я много катался, когда был ребёнком. When my granny was younger, she used to travel to different places of our country in summer. — Когда моя бабушка была моложе, летом она много путешествовала по нашей стране.

Вопросы и отрицания с данной конструкцией образуются при помощи вспомогательного глагола did.

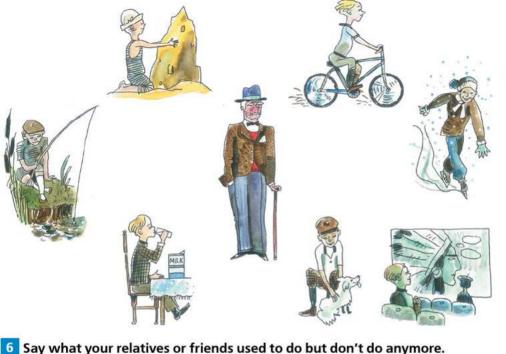
Did you use to work here?
We didn't use to read books about dinosaurs.

Обратите внимание на то, что после этой конструкции обычно употребляется инфинитив, но в некоторых случаях он опускается.

I don't play the piano now, but I used to (do it).



Mr Wilson is a very old man. Look at the pictures and say what he used to do when he was a small boy.



153

say what your relatives of mends used to do but don't do anymore.

E x a m p l e: My sister used to get up late but she doesn't any longer.

to take long walks, to live in the country, to go to the cinema, to watch television a lot, to work in the garden, to collect pictures, to write poems, to work on the computer, to read at night, to dance, to drive a car

7 Say how things happened some time ago and how they happen now.

Example: light their streets and houses with gas/use electricity

Some time ago people used to light their streets and houses with gas but now they use electricity.

- 1) travel on horseback/travel by car, train and bus
- 2) wash things by hand/wash things in a washing machine [məˈ[i:n]
- 3) write letters/send e-mails

4) write books by hand/print¹ books 5) read more books/watch a lot of television 6) have big families with a lot of children/have smaller families 7) die early/live longer lives 8) walk upstairs and downstairs/use lifts 9) know not so much about our planet/know a lot about it 10) dream about flying to the stars/do it 154 8 Read the information below and complete it with the right figures. (The answers are on p. 155.) How Long Does It Take? 1) Some scientists think that it took the Solar System² about ... million years to form from a cloud of a) 6 gas. 2) It takes the Earth ... days to go around the b) 22 Sun. 3) It takes the Moon just over ... days to travel c) 4,600 round the Earth. 4) It took the English language about ... years to develop into the language we speak today. 5) When Romans came to the British Isles in 53 BC, they built some very good roads. In those days it took only ... days by horse to get from London d) 200 to Rome. About 1,500 years later in the 19th century it took just as long. 6) It takes only ... minutes to fly from Westray e) 2 Island to Papa Westray near Scotland. It is the shortest flight we know. 7) An early bike that was popular in the 17th century had no pedals. It took ... years to make a bike f) 27 with pedals. 8) The eucalyptus³ grows quicker than any other g) 1,600 tree: it takes about ... year to grow 10.5 metres h) $365^{1}/_{4}$ tall. 9) The sloth⁴ is the slowest land animal in the world. It takes a sloth about ... minutes to go 100 i) 1 metres. The best runner in the world can do this distance in under 10 seconds.

¹ to print [print] — печатать

to print [print] — печатать
the Solar System — Солнечная система

a eucalyptus [ju:kəˈliptəs] — эвкалипт
 a sloth [sləυθ] — ленивец (зоол.)

- Read and act out the dialogues. Then change parts of the dialogues using the words in the right column and act them out again. 1) — Could you wait a second? I'll change my clothes and come back. make tea water the plants A second? It usually takes you hours to change your clothes. walk the dog Don't be silly! It won't take me call Sally more than five minutes, you'll wash the plates see.
 - 2) I hate washing the plates, it usually takes me hours.
 - quickly. It doesn't take me more than 10 minutes. - Really?!

— Does it? I wash the plates very

- 3) How long will it take me to do the History Museum? - It will take you rather long, it's
 - a very big museum. - I see.
 - Answers to exercise 8, page 154.

Do It on Your Own

10 Use the word take in the right form. 1) In older times it ... people weeks to travel from Moscow to St Petersburg. Now it ... us from 1.5 to 8 hours. 2) I am going to the shops. It ... me rather a long time to buy everything I need.

1 c, 2 h, 3 f, 4 g, 5 a, 6 e, 7 d, 8 i, 9 b

Don't wait for me. 3) It ... people a long time to understand that the future of our planet is in danger. 4) Yesterday it ... us half an

doing my homework

to get to St Petersburg

to grow a fruit garden

cleaning the room

washing the car

to learn English

to do this exercise

cooking

hour to clean the classroom and decorate it for the holiday. 5) How long ... you to finish writing the story? Will it be ready tomorrow? 6) It never ... me longer than 20 minutes to do my room. I do it very quickly. 7) Last year it ... the Browns two

155

11 Insert the missing words, where necessary.

ence ... the people of the Earth?

1) Nowadays a lot of animals and birds are ... danger. 2) It is dangerous to cut ... forests. 3) Reading such books is just a waste ... time. 4) The population ... tigers ... the Far East is getting smaller ... number. 5) There was a narrow road running ... the trees in the forest. 6) Scientists want to know how living things develop in relation ... each other. 7) A lot of factories pour their industrial waste ... rivers, seas and lakes. 8) Ecologists can help us to live ... our planet ... making our environment dangerous. 9) Mr Poller is 92 but he is ... good health. 10) How does the sun influ-

Step Four

Do It Together

- 1 A. Listen to the text "Rainforests", 🔞 (53), and complete these sentences.
 - 1) Rainforests used to grow on different continents: in
 - 2) A hundred million years ago rainforests grew
 - 3) The ... rainforest is famous all over the world.
 - 4) In rainforests it rains
 - 5) In rainforests the usual temperature is 6) In the twentieth century people began
 - B. Why do you think rainforests are so important for the life on the planet?
- Work in pairs. Find out how long it takes your partners:
 - · to do their room (flat) · to do the shopping
 - · to get to school · to wash the plates
 - · to do their homework · to help their grandparents

口()

J

- 10 years old (on the farm) · to feed animals
- to plant trees
- to grow fruit and vegetables to ride horses
- · to help his parents about the
- farm

- 20 years old (in London)
 - · to go to university to travel by underground
 - to visit museums
- to meet a lot of interesting people
- · to have a lot of friends
- 4 Say what life used to be like on our planet many years ago in prehistoric¹ times.
 - water land
 - ice
 - · climate

щества)

щать

- · forests · animals
- people
- Learn how to pronounce and use the new words. Listen, (54), and repeat.

A.

группы (организации, об-

badge [bæф] — значок

member ['membə] — член

protect [prəˈtekt] — защи-

protected [prəˈtektɪd] — за-

мирающий extinct [ik'stinkt] — вымерший, исчезнувший

endangered [in'deinфəd] — вы-

destroy [dr'stroi] — paspyшать habitat ['hæbitæt] — естест-

щищённый венная среда обитания



¹ prehistoric [pri:hi'stprik] — доисторический

badge: old badges, to collect badges, a wonderful collection of

badges. In some English schools pupils wear school badges on

their uniforms.

member: a member of the group, a member of the party. There used to be ninety members in our club but there are only thirty now. protect: to protect life, to protect birds and animals, to protect

4

158

from danger. We should protect wildlife on the Earth. John wore

can vou name?

las?

a jacket to protect himself from the cold.

protected: a protected species. Lily of the valley is a protected

species of flowers.

natural habitat of tigers?

endangered: endangered species, endangered animals. Elephants

in Africa have become endangered animals. There are many endangered animals nowadays, for example African and Indian li-

ons, mountain gorillas [gəˈrɪləz] in Africa.

extinct: to become extinct, extinct species, extinct animals. The

Tasmanian tiger became extinct in 1936. What extinct animals

destroy: to destroy towns, to destroy a castle. People have dehabitat: a habitat of plants, a habitat of animals. What is the

6 Answer these questions.

stroyed half of the world's rainforests.

1) What is the natural habitats of fish, bears, elephants, goril-

2) What animals are extinct?

3) There are a lot of endangered species of animals and plants nowadays. Can you name some of them?

4) How can people protect endangered animals? 5) Can you give an example of how man destroys the habitats of

birds, animals and plants? 6) Why do people destroy forests? How does this influence the

wildlife? The life of people?

7) Do you think it is easy for different animal species to survive

in the 21st century? Why?

8) Have you ever been a member of some ecological organization? Would you like to become one?

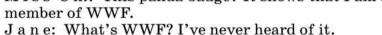
A. Listen to the text, (6) (55), and find in it some important information about WWF and Greenpeace. Then act out the dialogue.

An Unusual Badge

Jane: Miss Chapman, may I ask you something? Miss Ch.: Yes, Jane, what is it?

Jane: What's that badge you are wearing?

Miss Ch.: This panda badge? It shows that I am a member of WWF.



Miss Ch.: WWF means "Worldwide Fund for Nature". It's an international organization that protects wildlife on the planet.

I believe WWF needs our support because it is very important to help wild animals to survive. Jane: What do they do to help animals to survive?

Miss Ch.: Different things. Mostly they help endangered animals. For example, if the population of some species is very small, it means they can become extinct. Ecologists protect them and try to make their population larger.

Jane: I see. That's very interesting. They are like Greenpeace. I'd like to work with Greenpeace. I think they are very active and brave. They stop those people who kill endangered animals and destroy their habitats.

Miss Ch.: I know. All ecological organizations are useful. The more of them the better. Everyone should do what they can.

B. What endangered animals do you know? What can help them to survive?

8 Whose badges are they?

Example: Badge one belongs to a pupil.







159 コ





١.

160

MOCKBA







- a) a pupil
- b) a sports club fan¹
- c) a Greenpeace member
- d) a member of an Olympic team²
- e) a member of an international peace³ organization
- f) a history lover
- g) a member of a readers' organization
- h) a member of the international organization "Worldwide Fund for Nature"
- i) a member of an ecological movement



менно.

Focus

В английском языке часто встречается конструкция the more... the more (the more... the less, etc.). Обратите внимание на употребление сравнительной степени прилагательных и наречий с определённым артиклем для того, чтобы подчеркнуть, что оба процесса происходят одновре-

The more people you know, the less time you have to see them. — Чем больше людей ты знаешь, тем меньше времени у тебя на то, чтобы видеться с ними.

ними.

The longer I stay in Moscow, the more I love the city. — Чем дольше я живу в Москве, тем больше я люблю этот город.

¹ **a fan** — болельщик

 ² a team — команда
 ³ peace — мир, покой

Say the same in Russian.

- 1) The more ecological organizations we have, the better.
- 2) The more people you meet, the more friends you get.
- 3) The fewer mistakes you make in your tests, the better mark vou get.
- 4) The less we destroy our planet, the happier we will be.
- 5) The kinder you are to your pets, the more they love you.
- 6) The more you speak English, the better you do it.
- 7) The stronger you are, the better you play football. 8) The more you watch television, the less time you have for
- reading. 9) The more trees we plant, the cleaner air we breathe. 10) The longer I collect badges, the more interesting it becomes.

B.

The more we learn, the more we know. The more we know, the more we forget. The more we forget, the less we know.

Then why study?

10 Match the parts of the sentences.

- 1) The more fruit and vegetables we eat. 2) The warmer and wetter the
- climate is, 3) The more water we waste,
- 4) The more people travel, 5) The longer you stay in the
- hot sun, 6) The friendlier you are,
- 7) The bigger the animal population is.
- 8) The more we know about English-speaking countries,
- 9) The more we study the history of people,
- 10) The more paper we use,

- a) the more they learn about the world. b) the more people like you.
- learn the language. d) the better plants grow.
- e) the easier it is for them to

c) the more interesting it is to

- survive. f) the healthier we are.
- g) the more trees we have to cut down.
- h) the more we destroy the ecology of our lakes and riv-
- ers. i) the more interesting the facts we learn.
- j) the more dangerous for you it is.

161

コ



Do It on Your Own

- 11 Write 5 true sentences.
 - 1) The more time I spend with my friends,
 - 2) The longer I learn English,
 - 3) The older I get,

162

4

- 4) The more I think about the future,
- 5) The better I understand life,
- 12 Use the new words to complete the sentences.
 - 1) Tigers living in the Far East of Russia have become e... species.
 - 2) Flamingos live in the tropics. They are water birds, so their h... is lakes.
 - 3) The names of all pr... species of Russia are in the Red Book of plants and animals.
 - 4) Greenpeace tries to stop those who d... nature.5) When people cut down forests, a lot of species become ex....
 - 6) It's not easy to p... our world from air, water and soil pollution.
 - 7) M...s of ecological organizations often wear b...s to show what their interests and ideas are.

Step Five

Do It Together

1 Read the text, then listen to it, (56), and say what information is missing in the text.

As Dead² as a Dodo ['dəudəu]

You have never seen a dodo. Your friends and teachers have never seen a dodo. Your grandparents never saw a dodo. The last of these large quiet birds died many years ago.

The dodo lived on the island of Mauritius [məˈrɪʃəs]. Dutch ships came to that island



口()

is missing [ˈmɪsɪŋ] — отсутствует
 dead [ded] — мёртвый

and found these big fat birds. Dodos could not fly, but they were not afraid of people. Visitors to Mauritius killed all the dodos on the island. By the

1690s there were no dodos in the world. Nowadays you can see only bones of these birds and their pictures. The story of the dodo is very sad and it shows you how dangerous

man can be and how easy it is to destroy wildlife.

2 This is what some people think about ecological problems. Which of their ideas do you agree1 with?

What Can I Do?

Anna: They are beginning to build a new road near our beautiful park. Birds and small animals are afraid of people and the noise from roads. So they will leave this place. My friends and I are going to write to our local politicians [pplitifanz] and

ask them to stop building the road.



163

Fi <

Liza: I am an animal lover, so I don't eat meat. Sheep, pigs and cows aren't in danger, but they don't live in their natural environment and they die young for meat eaters.



Mike: I always walk or go by bike. People can do something about pollution from cars.

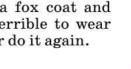


Mr Potter: I give money to protect wild animals — whales and dolphins². I think it is very important to help these wonderful sea animals to survive.



¹ to agree — соглашаться

² whales [weilz] and dolphins ['dolfinz] — киты и дельфины



Mark: I never go to the zoo. I hate zoos because I think that animals are not happy there. Zoos are not natural places for any animal.



Sofia: I never buy early spring flowers. Most of

them are endangered and I think it is very bad to



164

Focus

make money by destroying them!

слов what и how. Cp.: What a wonderful day (it is)! How wonderful the day is! What a clever boy he is! How clever he is!

What interesting stories! How interesting the stories are! What cold water! How cold the water is!

Обратите внимание на использование артиклей в восклицательных предложениях с what. 1. В предложениях с исчисляемыми существительными в единственном

В английском языке восклицательные предложения строятся с помощью

- числе нужен неопределённый артикль.
- What a big park it is! What an interesting book! 2. В предложениях с исчисляемыми существительными во множествен-

ном числе употребляется **нулевой** артикль¹. What kind gentlemen! What tasty sweets!

3. В предложениях с неисчисляемыми существительными также употребляется нулевой артикль.

What fresh air! What fine weather!

¹ нулевой артикль (zero article) — отсутствие артикля перед именами существительными

| Say the same in a different way. | | |
|--|--|-----------|
| What! 1) 2) What fresh air! 3) What beautiful valleys! 4) 5) 6) What slow animals! 7) 8) What funny monkeys! 9) 10) What tasty chocolate! | How! 1) How dangerous this place is! 2) 3) 4) How powerful the king is! 5) How charming the babies are! 6) 7) How rich this area is! 8) 9) How fast the rabbits are! 10) | Step Five |
| peat. | the new words, listen, ┫ (57), and re- | |
| A. save [seiv] — спасать law [lo:] — закон government ['gʌvnmənt] — правительство responsible [rɪˈspɒnsəbl] — ответственный hunt [hʌnt] — охотиться | damage ['dæmiф] — повредить, нанести урон unfortunately [ʌnˈfɔ:tʃ(ə)nətli] — к несчастью recycle [ˌri:ˈsaikl] — перерабатывать necessary [ˈnesis(ə)ri] — необходимый | |
| but he saved the pictures. Only law: good laws, to make a law dangered species of animals is government: the Russian government is the people responsible: a responsible persponsible for sth. Who is responsible for sth. Who is responsible to damage buildings damaged the island's ecology. hunt: to hunt animals for sth. | ernment, the British government. who rule a country or a state. rson, a responsible post, to be reonsible for buying the food for dint, to damage forests. Pollution has | |

((i)

166

unfortunately: unfortunately for sb. Unfortunately we are leaving Moscow tonight. Unfortunately for Garry the weather has changed for the worse. He can't go hunting.

recycle: to recycle waste, to recycle paper (glass). Japan recycles

40% (forty per cent) of its waste.

necessary: to be necessary for sb. Such food is necessary for your health. I have packed all the necessary things for our trip. You

5 Complete the sentences.

Must or Must Not?

- 1) Governments ... put laws into practice¹.
- 2) Governments ... build factories to recycle waste.

should come at noon if Alice says it is necessary.

- 3) We ... support people who damage endangered plants. We ... buy early spring flowers such as the lily of the valley. 4) Politicians ... listen to scientists and do all they can to protect
- nature.
- 5) Governments ... make laws that can damage the environment.
- 6) All people ... be responsible for the future of our planet.
- 7) Nobody ... hunt endangered animals.
- 8) We all ... work together to save our planet.
- a conference ['kpnfrans] soon. Say how they are preparing for it. Example: to make badges for the conference members

6 These children belong to the Young Ecologists Club. They are going to have

Pete is responsible for making badges for the conference members.



1) Pete







5) William

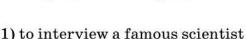
¹ to put laws into practice — претворять законы в жизнь











- 2) to invite a well-known ecologist to school
- to decorate the hall
- 4) to talk on endangered species of plants and animals
- 5) to talk on the main ecological problems
- 6) to write questions to the members of the local government on the ecology of the place
- 7) to take photos of the local National Park
- 8) to write a letter to the local government to build a new recycling factory
- A. Read the text and say what governments should do to protect nature in their countries.

Will We Survive?

People have been polluting the planet on which they live for many years. The result [ri'zʌlt] is very sad. We all live in a polluted world. Pollution started in a small way, but then it began growing and soon we will all be in danger. The time has come to save our planet, to protect people, animals and plants from dying.

First of all countries should have strong laws to control pollution, to protect animals and plants. Governments should be responsible for protecting nature. Today the law in some countries says: "The polluter must pay. If a person damages trees or animals, he must also pay." But unfortunately such good laws don't always work.

Scientists often meet and talk about ways of helping nature, and politicians in many countries listen to them and are beginning to talk about this too.

Countries can open national parks. They are big and usually very beautiful places without buildings. These are homes for animals

168

living freely and also for birds, trees and flowers. Visitors can go there but they can't hunt there. Politicians can think of ways to stop hunting. Governments should also find ways to recycle things we have

used: paper bags and plastic bags, plastic bottles and cans¹, glass and metal things. They should build recycling factories. Governments must control and if necessary, close dangerous plants and factories.

We all must work together to make our planet a safe and beautiful place to live.

- B. Listen, 🕙 (58), and read the text after it again.
- 8 Read the text "Shall We Survive?" again and say:
 - · why we all will be in danger soon
 - how laws can help to protect nature
 - why politicians must listen to scientistsin what way national parks can help to protect wildlife
 - what things we can recycle and why it is important
 - · what things we can recycle and why it is important
 - $\boldsymbol{\cdot}$ who is responsible for making our planet a safe and beautiful place



Social English

9 A. Learn instructing [ɪnˈstrʌktɪŋ] people how to do things.

The first thing you should do is... — Первое, что нужно сделать, это...

The next thing you do is... — Следующее, что ты сделаешь, это... By the way, don't forget to... — Между прочим, не забудь...

Remember to... — Не забудь...

Another thing to remember is... — Ещё о чём нельзя забыть, так это...

Be careful not to... — Смотри не...

B. Complete the text. Use the "instruction" phrases.

Grow Your Own Violets²

(1) is to choose a healthy leaf and cut it off from the plant.
(2) is to prepare a pot of good soil. By the way, (3) to wet

the soil well. (4) to make the soil soft. Put the leaf into the soil as you see in the picture. (5) not to damage it. Take a glass jar



口))

¹ **a can** — консервная банка ² **a violet** ['vaɪəlɪt] — фиалка

Do It on Your Own

- 10 Use the articles (a/an, the) where necessary.
 - 1) What ... big ears you have, grandma! 2) How dangerous ... place looks! 3) How ... empty the islands are! 4) What ... unusual
 - clock it is! 5) How brave ... boys are! 6) What ... interesting films!
 - 7) How polluted ... lake is! 8) How sunny ... weather is! 9) What ... funny clothes she wears! 10) What ... tasty vegetables I've bought!
- 111 Write the same in English.

Спасать вымирающих животных, создавать законы, влиять на экологию, загрязнять реки, изучать вымершие виды, перерабатывать отходы, быть ответственным за охрану (защиту) природы, охотиться на диких животных, наносить урон лесам, разрушать места обитания животных.

What Do You Think?

- 12 Which of these proverbs are true? Explain why.
 - 1) As you sow, so you reap.
 - 2) It is a foolish bird that soils its own nest.
 - 3) Desperate diseases must have desperate remedies.

Check Your Progress

13 Write TEST 4 (Workbook 2, pp. 36—43) and check your results.

| Tasks | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | | | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8a | Total |
|----------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|------|----|----|-------|
| | | | | а | b | c | 8 | | | | |
| Maximum result | 6 | 7 | 7 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 5 | ==== | 10 | 15 | 62 |
| Your result | | | | | | | | | | | |

¹ to cover ['kʌvə] — 3∂ .: накрывать

169

5



Keeping Fit

Step One

Do It Together

You will hear two texts, (59). Choose titles for them from those below.

There is one extra title.

口()

- a) The Ecology of Man
- b) How to Stop Pollution
- c) What We Need Is Working Together
- 2 Give your reaction¹ to these phrases as in the example.

Example: The Mississippi is the longest river in the USA.

- a) (What/mighty)
- What a mighty river it is!
- b) (How/mighty)
- How mighty the river is!
- 1) Sid's brother is a famous journalist. (How/proud)
- 2) Everybody in Russia knows Saratov, Samara and Volgograd that lie on the Volga. (What/famous)
- 3) These are the longest instructions I have ever read. (How/difficult)
- 4) Nowadays many governments have good laws protecting nature. (What/responsible)
- 5) This badge belongs to a member of our ecological society. (What/unusual)

¹ reaction [riˈæk∫n] — реакция

- 6) Jane is on a diet. She eats only fruit and vegetables. (How/ healthy) 7) A lot of factories dump their waste into this river. (What/ dangerous)
- 8) Mr Richardson is a successful businessman. So many men
- work for him. (What/powerful) 9) There are some unpolluted places around Moscow. (What/



В английском языке есть ещё одно грамматическое время из группы прошедших времён — past perfect (прошедшее совершённое). Оно строится по следующей модели:

had + V₃

safe)

I had done... He had written... We had met...

Данное время используется для обозначения действия, которое произошло до определённого момента в прошлом.

I had done my flat by 3 o'clock. I had done my flat by the time mother came back.

Обычно past perfect употребляется, когда нужно рассказать о двух действиях в прошлом, подчёркивая, что одно из них произошло раньше, чем другое.

Jane couldn't find the key I had given her. — Джейн не могла найти ключ, который я ей когда-то (некоторое время тому назад) дал.

Past perfect часто употребляется со словами after, before, when, as soon as, because, by the time.

As soon as I had washed the plates, mum came.

After Mary had done the shopping, she went back home.

Robin had left before Alice returned.

When Betty phoned, Jim had already sent the e-mail to her.

Look at the pictures and say what they had done by four o'clock yesterday.

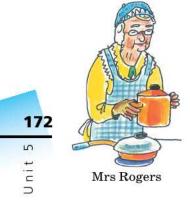
Example: Rose had written a letter by four o'clock yesterday.



O _ 0

171

0 Stel

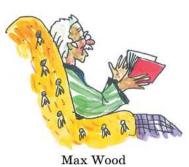






Mrs Brown





Henry



Kelly Hudson

- 4 Say what these people had just done when it started raining. Example: Mr Robinson/to put his car into the garage Mr Robinson had just put his car into the garage when it started raining. 1) Larry/to leave his office 2) Bobby/to get on a bus 3) Mr Newman/to enter the shop 4) Dan/to decide to go for a walk 5) Ms Forester/to come out into the garden
 - 6) The Trembles/to finish supper 7) Charles/to turn on the television 8) Sharon/to clean the floors 9) Lizzy/to wash her sweater
- 10) Mr Mole/to start working in the garden 5 Say what you had done yesterday.
 - a) before your parent(s) came back home b) by the time supper was ready c) by 6 p.m.
- 6 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words, (60).

A.

smoke [sməuk] — курить

2) лекарство

drug [drng] - 1) наркотик;

hard [hɑ:d] — 1) adj тяжё-

лый, усердный; 2) adv тя-

junk food [ˈʤʌŋk fuːd] — не-

жело, усердно, сильно

полноценная пища

- exercise ['eksəsaiz] физические упражнения, моцион
- enough [ɪˈnʌf] достаточно join [фэт] — присоединяться relax [п'læks] — расслабляться
- **keep** [ki:p] держать, хранить, оставить себе
- harm [ha:m] вред B.
- exercise: a lot of exercise, to get exercise, to take (have) exer-
- cise. Boris should take more exercise. enough: enough food, enough time, tall enough, quickly enough.

join: to join the club, to join the group. Alan joined us for a walk.

relax: Sit down and try to relax for half an hour.

Are there enough vegetables to make a salad? Does Ann play the piano well enough?

口()

173

more harm than good. harmful: harmful food, to be harmful for sb or sth. Reading in bed can be harmful for your eyes. smoke: I don't smoke. Mr Brown smokes only cigars, he doesn't smoke a pipe. Stop smoking, it will damage your health. No smoking! drug: 1) to take drugs, to use drugs. Jenny has never taken drugs in her life and she says she never will. No drug-taking. 2) Aspirin is a well-known drug that often helps. hard: 1) hard work, a hard day, hard life. It's hard to believe that we are leaving this place forever. 2) to work hard, to breathe hard, to fight hard. I was trying very hard to remember her name. junk food: Junk food is not healthy, there is a lot of fat, salt and sugar in it. 7 Complete the sentences. Use the new words. 1) Paul is a member of our football team now, he ... it not long ago. 2) Some children prefer ... food to having a real lunch at school. So they buy chocolate, sweets and chips. 3) We have a number of very good pupils in my class. They all work very ... and get good marks. 4) I'm afraid I haven't got ... money to buy this new disk. 5) Victor ... his word and brought us a good dictionary. 6) It said "No ...!" on the wall but there stood a man who was ... a cigarette. 7) Where do you ... your books? I can't see any bookcase or bookshelves in your room. 8) After I had broken my arm, my doctor told me to ... it as much as possible.

and always keep your word.

174

2

keep (kept, kept): to keep sth, to keep doing something, to keep a secret, to keep a diary, to keep (to) a diet, to keep fit. Where can I keep my books? I always keep a carton of milk in the fridge. John kept walking without listening to her. She has kept a diary since childhood. You should take a lot of exercise to keep fit. Try

harm: a lot of harm, no harm, to do some harm. It'll do you no

harm to have some exercise, in fact it will do you a lot of good. If you spend so much time working on the computer, it'll do you

3) Be sporty. Join a sports club or go to the gym and work out¹.

176

2

Unit

- 4) Take enough sleep. Most people need eight hours of sleep to feel well.
- 5) Leave some time for relaxing after a hard working day.
- 6) Spend some time out of doors every day. Fresh air does us a lot of good.
- 7) Limit the time you spend in front of your television or computer to an hour — an hour and a half.
- 8) Keep to a healthy balanced diet. Don't overeat.
 - 9) Don't eat junk food. Some kinds of food are harmful.
 - 10) Don't smoke or drink alcohol. Never use drugs.

10 Which of the rules (ex. 9) do you think are the most important and why? Put them all in order of importance².



Focus

Обратите внимание на сочетания слова enough с различными частями речи.

enough + noun

to have enough time to get enough money to make enough sandwiches

adjective + enough adverb + enough verb + enough

to be long enough to run quickly enough not to practise enough

11 Complete these sentences.

1) John is (old enough/enough old) to go to school. 2) Don't hurry. There is (time enough/enough time) to do it. 3) There is (food enough/enough food) for everyone. 4) The poor man doesn't (eat enough/enough eat). 5) Have I made (enough coffee/coffee enough)? 6) Have we (enough apples/apples enough) for everyone? 7) The days have become (long enough/enough long). 8) Kevin doesn't work (hard enough/enough hard). 9) The road is not (wide enough/enough wide) for two cars. 10) Are there (enough pencils/pencils enough) for all the pupils?

¹ to work out — поддерживать физическую форму

² Put them all in order of importance. — Расположи их (правила) в порядке важности.

Do It on Your Own

5) Mary had already had break-

7) Brian had just left the school

8) I had already known every-

6) Victor had heard the news

Достаточно усердно, достаточно сильный, достаточно воздуха, достаточно быстро, достаточно вопросов, достаточно сложный, достаточно успешный, достаточно энергии.

- 13 Match the two parts of the sentences. Compare your results.
 - 1) We had just finished the job a) before the bell rang.
 - 2) They had written the exercise b) when I entered the kitchen.
 - 3) Alice had read the book
 - c) by 3 o'clock yesterday. 4) John had finished watching TV d) before I gave it to her.
 - e) when it started raining.
 - f) before I told him about it. g) when Tom brought us some more.
 - h) by the time I got the telegramme.

Step Two

fast

building

thing

12 Write it in English.

Do It Together

1 A. Listen to the text "Fast Food", 🔞 (61), and complete the sentences.



- 1) We can find fast food restaurants
- 2) It doesn't take ... to have meals in fast food restaurants.
- 3) Nowadays scientists talk a lot about
- 4) Some scientists think that many people have become fat because
- 5) In fast food restaurants there is



177

- B. Why do you think fast food restaurants are so popular all over the world? Why are they popular if they do so much harm? Read the examples and say how we can form questions and negative sentences in past perfect.
- 178

2

- 1) When Tom came to his office, he was hungry. He hadn't had breakfast. 2) Jane was unhappy when she came back home. She hadn't written her test.
 - 3) I didn't know what to do, Martin hadn't phoned me.

B.

Why are they used in this text?

hadn't had time for them.

- 1) Had Tom gone home when you came? Yes, he had.
- 2) Had Mary cleaned the floor by 7 o'clock? No, she hadn't.
- 3) Had you cooked lunch before granny got up? Yes, I had.
- 3 Read the text "Prodigy Child" and find in it sentences in past perfect.

Prodigy Child

Kevin was a prodigy child. By the age of two he had learned to read and write. Before his fifth birthday his parents had taught him to speak French and German and he played the piano rather well. Kevin was a great lover of books and by the age of ten he had already read all the books in his father's library. When all his friends were still in the second form, he had already left school. After he had finished col-

lege, he went to university to become a micro-



biologist. At sixteen he was ready for his final exams and soon became the youngest scientist in the history of his country. He was happy because he hadn't wasted his time and got a good profession that he loved. The only problem with Kevin was that he had never played football or basketball with his friends and had no idea of sports, games or children's parties: he Sam had left before Ann got there.

Sam left before Ann got there.

After the guests had left, I went to bed.

After the guests left, I went to bed.

2. Past simple, а не past perfect употребляется в том случае, когда действия в прошлом происходили одно непосредственно за другим. Ср.:

Pete came home and helped his sister to cook dinner. Larry opened the door and his dog ran in.

4 Choose the right item to complete the sentences.

- 1) I was really surprised when I learned that Harry
- b) had become a champion a) became a champion 2) When Tom went to medical school, he already ... a lot of books
 - on anatomy.
- b) had read a) read 3) I ... from school rather tired and decided to relax for half an
 - hour in front of the television.

a) came

4) The child didn't feel very well. I think he ... too much junk food.

b) had come

- b) had eaten a) ate
- 5) By the beginning of the new year Paul ... our team and was playing for the school.
 - a) joined b) had joined
- 6) I kept my word and ... hard during the rest of the school term.
 - a) worked b) had worked
- 7) Father began to feel much better because he ... up smoking.
 - b) had given a) gave
- 8) The garden looked terrible: the wind and the rain ... it badly. a) damaged b) had damaged

179

× ⊢



5 Make up sentences about Andy with because. Use past perfect. Example: Andy was sick when he smoked a cigarette. Andy was sick when he smoked a cigarette because he had never smoked before. 1) Andy decided to go to the disco. 2) Andy bought the new disc of his favourite singer. 3) Andy got very tired of roller-skating.

- 180
- 2 Unit
- 4) Andy didn't play baseball very well.
- 5) Andy bought a beautiful new jacket. 6) Andy went to bed early yesterday. 7) Andy fell off the horse.
- 8) Andy was afraid to drive. 9) Andy wanted to watch "Lord of the Rings" on television.
- 10) Andy began to learn Italian. 11) Andy went to a Japanese restaurant.
- 12) Andy didn't know how to grow roses.
- 6 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words and word combinations. Listen, (62), and repeat.

A.

medicine ['medsən] — 1) ме-

lose [lu:z] — терять weight [weit] — вес weigh [wei] — весить, взвешивать still [stɪl] — ещё, всё ещё habit ['hæbit] — привычка

дицина; 2) лекарство

jog [фрд] — бегать трусцой

cine for sth. Penicillin is a medicine. What medicine do you take for a high temperature? lose (lost, lost): to lose keys, to lose money. Mike lost his job last

ся изо всех сил medicine: 1) to study medicine. Sandra studied medicine for five years before she became a doctor. 2) to take medicines, a medi-

to have a cold — быть про-

to do one's best — постарать-

hardly ['ha:dli] — едва

to get a cold

to catch a cold

to come down

with a cold

стуженным

year. I can't find my address book anywhere. I think I have lost it. weight: the weight of a suitcase, in weight, to lose weight, to put on weight. The box was about 12 kilos in weight. Have you lost weight? Susan has put on weight since the summer.

простудиться

口()

181

ing down with a cold. do one's best: I don't know if I can do it but I'll do my best. Nick says he will do his best to keep his word.

jogging every morning.

ever does anything interesting.

his meals.

school.

Focus

ческую систему измерения веса и расстояния. Английские школьники, как и российские, учат в школе, что километр состоит из тысячи метров, а в килограмме — тысяча граммов. Однако все жители Британии хорошо помнят старую систему измерений и продолжают ею пользоваться. Так, на рынках и в магазинах вам взвешивают продукты в фунтах, объём напитков исчисляется в пинтах, а расстояние — в милях. Для многих людей, особенно старшего поколения, это гораздо более привычно. То же положение дел характерно и для США.

Weight

weigh: to weigh much, to weigh little. The baby weighs three ki-

still: I'm still busy. Johnny still goes to school. It is still raining. habit: a good habit, a terrible habit, to give up a habit. My sister has healthy eating habits. My elder brother has some very bad habits. He sometimes smokes in bed and doesn't wash up after

jog (jogged, jogged): to jog in the morning, to go jogging. When people jog, they run slowly usually for exercise or pleasure. I go

hardly: Boris can hardly speak English. There was hardly any wind. Bob has hardly eaten anything. Hardly ever: He hardly

catch (get/have) a cold: When you catch a cold, doctors usually tell you to stay in bed. Joanna has a bad cold and doesn't go to

come down with a cold: What's the matter? — I think I'm com-

В 1999 году в Британии закончился официальный переход на метри-

los. The shop girl weighed the tomatoes for me.

Length

Liquids

1 inch = 2.54 cm1 foot = 0.3048 m

1 yard = 3 feet = 0.9144 m1 mile = 1.609 km

1 pint [paint] = $0.4732 \, dm^3$

 $1 \text{ gallon} = 3.7853 \text{ dm}^3$

1 pound/lb/ = 0.454 kg

1 stone = 14 pounds = 6.35 kg

1 ounce [aons]/oz/ = 28.35 q

би от целого числа точкой, а не запятой, как принято у нас. Ср.:

Russian style: 27,58

182

2

English style: 27.58 [twenti 'sevn point 'fifti eit]

Answer the questions using the new words.

and bad habits have you got? 3) How often do you catch colds and what do you do when you have them? 4) What are some of the things you can hardly do? 5) Learning which school subjects do you do your best? 6) How much do you weigh? And what is your weight in stones? (This is the way the English measure¹ their weight.) 7) Do you put on and lose weight easily? What do you do to lose weight? 8) Some medicines can help you to lose weight. Do you think such medicines do good or harm to your body?

1) What makes jogging such a popular exercise? 2) What good

8 Say: a) which of these you can hardly do; b) which of these you hardly ever do.

A.

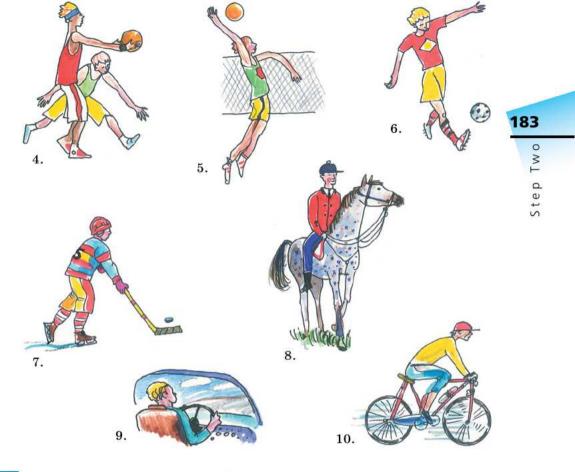
- play the piano
- jog in the morning ride a bike
- take photos
- work in the garden
- come home late

- swim in winter
- go to museums
- read books on ecology — wear school uniform
- sing English songs
- go to the zoo

 \boldsymbol{B} .



¹ to measure ['meʒə] — измерять



Hard or hardly? They are very different!

1) I'm so tired, I can (hard/hardly) move. 2) Sofia (hard/hardly) speaks any Italian, she's never learned it. 3) The way home was long and (hard/hardly) and we returned only late at night. 4) The text is very (hard/hardly). I don't think I'll be able to read it. 5) Two more tests coming tomorrow! Isn't it a (hard/hardly) life? 6) Jack is not my friend, I (hard/hardly) know him. 7) It is raining so (hard/hardly) that soon our garden will be under water. 8) This is (hard/hardly) the time for buying new clothes: we have very little money just enough to buy food. 9) It's (hard/hardly) to understand Nina when she speaks English fast. 10) This is a very (hard/hardly) question, I don't know how to answer it.

Two Interviews Interview 1

Interviewer: Do you think you're a healthy person?

Andrew: Yes, I get a cold one or two times a year and that's all. And I hardly take any medicines.

Interviewer: And do you think that's because of what you eat and the exercise you take?

Andrew: Maybe. I try to eat healthy food — fruit, vegetables and lots of salad. I do my best not to overeat and seldom eat sweets or cakes or just junk food.

Interviewer: What about smoking? Do you smoke?

Andrew: No, I've never smoked at all.

Interviewer: Do you drink alcohol?

Andrew: Yes, but only wine¹. Sometimes I have it with my meals.

Interviewer: And do you take much exercise?

Andrew: I'm afraid not enough. In summer I ride a bicycle² and in winter I try to do some swimming once a week but I feel that's not enough. I'm beginning to put on weight.

Interview 2

Interviewer: Sarah, you look fine and healthy. Do you think you're a healthy person?

Sarah: Well, I feel healthy. I'm not too bad.

Interviewer: And what about smoking? Do you smoke? Sarah: Yes, I still do. Not too much, two or three cigarettes a day. I know it's a bad habit. I tried to give it up but found it too hard.

Interviewer: Do you keep to any diet?

Sarah: Not really because I enjoy my food too much. I like fried³ food and sweet things. It's difficult to say that my diet is healthy.

Interviewer: And what about exercise? Do you jog or play tennis or anything?

Sarah: No, I'm afraid I don't. I try to walk to work and other places. So that's the only exercise I take.

B. Listen, (63), and read the text again after it.

¹ wine — вино

² **a bicycle** = bike ³ **fried** [fraid] — жареный

- 11 A. Act out one of the interviews (ex. 10). B. Interview one of your classmates. Ask him or her what they do to keep fit. **Focus**

 - Русское слово «ещё» может передаваться на английский язык двумя словами: still, yet. При этом still означает «всё ещё», а yet — «ещё не» и упот-

≥

Step

- ребляется в конце отрицательных предложений. It is still early. — Ещё рано. (Всё ещё...)
- He hasn't come yet. Он ещё не пришёл. (Ещё не...)
- 12 Still or yet? Which word to choose? 1) I haven't finished the book 2) John is ... sick. He doesn't
- go to school, 3) I ... don't understand you. Why haven't you come on time? 4) I came into the room and saw they were ... having tea. 5) I came into the room and saw that they hadn't fin-
- ished having tea 6) Where is Steve? He is ... jogging, I think. 7) Sharon has put on weight but she ... eats too many sweets. 8) I can't go with you because I'm ... busy. 9) Harris hasn't left ..., he's ... in the office. 10) Helen hasn't taken her medicine

Do It on Your Own

- 13 Complete the text. Use past simple or past perfect. Yesterday I (meet) (1) Betty at the bus stop. I (can) (2) hardly believe my eyes. Betty (change) (3) a lot. She (lose) (4) weight.
 - She (become) $\underline{^{(5)}}$ very slim. In fact, she (look) $\underline{^{(6)}}$ young and beautiful.
- 14 Make up one sentence out of two. Use after or before.

one of the "Harry Potter" books. I saw the film.

1) I took the medicine. I felt a little better. 2) Jane came to the party (at 6). Nick left (at 5:30). 3) The film began (at 7). We got to the cinema (at 7:15). 4) I told my parents everything. I felt much better. 5) I learnt it by heart. I found a new poem. 6) I read

Step Three

Do It Together

186

2

Unit

- 1 A. Listen to the dialogue, 🚳 (64), and say if the facts are true, false or there is no information about them in the text.
 - 1) Jane hasn't seen Alice for 5 years.
 - 2) Alice has put on weight.
 - 3) Jane keeps to a diet. 4) Alice doesn't take a lot of exercise.
 - 5) Alice jogs in the evening.
 - 6) Alice doesn't have much free time.
 - 7) Alice rides a bike very well. 8) Jane likes sweets very much.

B. What do you think about diets? Is keeping to a diet a good idea? Give your reasons.

- 2 Match up the parts of the sentences in the two columns. Compare your results.
 - 1) When he had painted the door,
 - 2) After Larry had washed the car, 3) When Rose had given up
 - smoking. 4) Tommy had come to school
 - 5) Eric didn't come to the meet-
 - ing 6) By the time mother returned

 - 7) After Greg had finished his homework,

A.

c) Terry had washed all the plates. d) it looked as good as new.

better.

f) because

a) he went to play football.

b) she began looking much

- e) before the lesson started.
- phoned him. g) he drove to the city centre.

Fred hadn't

3 Complete the texts. Use past simple or past perfect of the verbs in brackets.

When we came home from grandma's yesterday, our room was in a terrible mess. We (leave) (1) the window open and the wind (break) $\underline{}^{(2)}$ the vase. There (be) $\underline{}^{(3)}$ a lot of small pieces¹ of glass on the carpet and the carpet itself (be) (4) wet.

口()

¹ a piece [pi:s] — кусочек

B.

After we (paint) $\underline{}$ the door, we (not, put) $\underline{}$ the boxes with paint where they belonged. We (be) $\frac{(3)}{(3)}$ in a hurry as we (have) (4) to meet our friends at the airport at seven p.m.

When we (return) (5) home, we (see) (6) that something terrible (happen) (7). Our dog Rex (become) (8) vellow in many parts of his body. He definitely (lie) (9) on the sofa or maybe

(sleep) $\frac{(10)}{}$ on it, as there (be) $\frac{(11)}{}$ vellow marks all over. I (put)

 $\underline{\text{(12)}}$ my new white blouse on the armchair before we (leave) $\underline{\text{(13)}}$. I (not, have) (14) a fashionable blouse any more. Rex (touch) (15)



it too.

Focus

1. Обратите внимание на то, как происходит перевод прямой речи (direct speech) в косвенную (reported speech), если глагол, который вводит прямую речь, употребляется в past simple.

(1) John said: "I live in New York." John said (that) he lived in New York.

Bob said: "I can't swim." Bob said he couldn't swim.

(2) Bob said: "I am learning French."

Bob said he was learning French. We said to Tom: "We are leaving soon." We told Tom we were leaving soon.

(3) Ann said: "Jack went home." Ann said Jack had gone home.

Ann said to Helen: "I bought a good book."

Ann told Helen she had bought a good book. (4) Fred said: "I have done it." Fred explained1 he had done it.

Jill said to Ann: "You have made a mistake." Jill explained to Ann that she had made a mistake.

I said I had never been to India.

past simple

past perfect

present simple

present progressive

past progressive

past simple

past perfect

present perfect

187

Thre

Step

2. Past perfect часто используется в косвенной речи после глаголов said, told, asked, thought, explained, wondered².

She asked if John had read the book.

¹ to explain [ik'splein] — объяснять ² to wonder ['wʌndə] — интересоваться

She wondered who had left the door open. We thought the Browns had bought a new cottage. They explained that they had lost their keys. 4 Report what they said. Use the verbs tell, explain. 1) Frank said to Val: "I go jogging every morning." 188

I told them I hadn't met Andrew before.

- - 2) Mary said to Victor: "Don has caught a cold."
 - 3) David said to John: "I'm doing my best to learn it by heart."
 - 4) Robert said to Polly: "It was interesting."
 - 5) Alice said to Betty: "I have put on weight."
 - 6) Harry said to Lena: "We have bought a new disc."
 - 7) Lizzy said to Kevin: "I had a high temperature." 8) Sarah said to Kevin: "I don't know anything."
 - 9) Rose said to Brian: "We are keeping a healthy diet." 10) Kate said to Ann: "I can keep your secret."

Focus

Если глагол, который вводит прямую речь, стоит в past simple, при переводе прямой речи в косвенную следует помнить о том, что необходимо

производить определённые лексические изменения.

here → there this \rightarrow that

2

today → that day

ago → before $now \rightarrow then$

these → those yesterday → the day before

last night (week, year) → the previous ['pri:viəs] night (week, year)

5 Report what John said. Use the verbs ask, wonder, tell, explain.

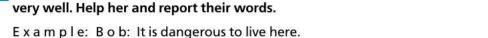
Example: "How long have you been here, Paul?" John wondered how long Paul had been there.

- 1) I am going to the cinema this afternoon.
- 2) These days we usually have lunch in the nearby café.

- 4) We had a conference on ecology yesterday. 5) I always stay here when I am in Glasgow.
- 6) Last week I gave up smoking. 7) Where did aunt Polly go last night?
- 8) Why is Sarah keeping to a diet now?

3) Jimmy has come to London today.

- 9) What club did Larry join three days ago? 10) Where were his friends last month?
- 6 Mrs Loveday wants to know what these people said. But she can't hear



Bob explained it was dangerous to live there.



- 1) Di a n a: Jane is relaxing now. She is having a holiday on the coast.
- 2) Frank: The population of the city is growing.
- 3) Mrs Crawford: We have done a lot today.
- 4) Steve: I kept a diary three years ago.
- 5) M s E v a n s: These medicines are well known.
- 6) Barbara: I bought a new badge yesterday. 7) Mary: I worked at the factory last year.

ривать

осложнение

swallow ['swpləu] — глотать

examine [ig'zæmin] — осмат-

complication [kpmpliker[n] —

A.

ache [eik] — ноющая, тупая боль, обычно не очень сильная

sneeze [sni:z] — чихать

cough [kbf] — кашлять pain [pein] — боль painful ['peinfl] — причиняющий боль, болезненный

prescribe [prɪˈskraɪb] — прописывать prescription [pri'skrip[ən] рецепт cure [kjuə] — вылечить

hurt [h3:t] -1) ушибить, повредить; 2) причинить боль

B.

190

2

Unit

ache: a headache, (a) backache, (a) stomachache¹. Tanya is ill, she has a high temperature and a headache. **sneeze:** to sneeze badly. There was a lot of pepper in the salad and Mike began sneezing.

cough: to cough badly. Sarah is coughing badly because she has a cold. To have a bad cough. James has been ill for a week but he still has a bad cough. Laura gave a little cough and began speaking.

pain: a lot of pain, to give sb a lot of pain, to have a pain in the leg. John was having terrible pains in his left side.

painful: a painful operation, painful words. It was painful to look at the sick child. hurt (hurt, hurt): 1) to hurt badly. I hurt my hand when I fell

down. Jack hurt his foot playing football. I've hurt my toe. 2) My leg hurts. Where does it hurt, Mr Jones? — Just here, doctor. Is that shoe hurting you? — It hurts to walk.

swallow: Tim swallowed and answered the question. Irene had a cold and it hurt her to swallow.

prescribe: to prescribe some medicines for an earache. Doctor, will you prescribe sth for my headache? Alice's doctor prescribed her some antibiotics [antibarbtiks].

prescription: a prescription for some medicine, to write out a prescription. The doctor has written out a prescription for antibiotics. This prescription is for my headaches.

¹ a stomachache [ˈstʌməkeɪk] — боль в животе

Dr Gordon: Come in and sit down, Paul. What's the matter with you? You don't look your best today. Paul: I've got a bad headache, doctor. I've been feeling bad

since yesterday night. Dr Gordon: Have you taken your temperature?

P a u l: No, I haven't. I never have a temperature.

Dr Gordon: Never say never, my boy. Let's take it now. Here is a thermometer. Please tell me more. Are you sneezing or

coughing? Is your nose running? Is there any pain in your chest?

Paul: No, doctor, I don't think so. I just have this headache and it hurts me to swallow, just a little. Dr Gordon: Will you open your mouth wide? I'd like to see

your throat. I think you're coming down with a cold, Paul, or maybe you've caught a virus. Paul: A virus? My younger sister has been in bed all week with a virus.

Dr Gordon: Then it's very likely that you've got it too. Let's look at your temperature. Tut-tut. What did I tell you? Never say never. Your temperature is 37.8. I'll write out a prescrip-

need this medicine to bring down the temperature and fight the virus.

Paul: What else shall I do, doctor? Dr Gordon: Stay in bed, drink a lot of warm tea or milk, take

the medicine I've prescribed and something for your headache. I'll call tomorrow afternoon and examine you again. Viruses take about a week to cure and may be dangerous because of their

tion. Ask one of your parents to take it to the chemist's. You

complications. Paul: Thank you for your time, Doctor.

Dr Gordon: Get well, Paul. I'll see you tomorrow.



| 1) Paul comes to see Doctor Go | ordon because he has | | |
|--|--------------------------------|------|------|
| a) a headache | b) a temperature | | |
| 2) Paul has just | | | |
| a) one problem | b) two problems | | |
| 3) The doctor examines Paul's | | | |
| a) nose | b) throat | | |
| 4) The doctor gives Paul a | | | |
| a) medicine | b) prescription for a medicine | 193 | |
| 5) The doctor is | | Φ | |
| a) going to visit Paul soon | | ā | |
| b) asking Paul to come to his | s office again | 4 | |
| 5 11 . | | Д. | |
| B. Listen, 🚳 (66), and read the dial | ogue again after it. | Step | □(1) |
| C. Act out the dialogue. | | St | |
| | | | |
| 10 Make up these dialogues. | | | |
| a) mother and daughter/son | | | |
| • have a problem | | | |
| · call the doctor | | | |
| • have a pain in my/your chest | | | |
| · cough | | | |
| · take my/your temperature | | | |
| · go to the chemist's | | | |
| buy a medicine for your/my | cough | | |
| b) doctor and patient | | | |
| · hurt to walk | | | |
| • fall down while playing bask | ethall | | |
| • examine the leg | Cuban | | |
| · stay at home | | | |
| write out a prescription | | | |
| · rub the medicine in | | | |
| c) two pupils (on the telephone | Y | | |
| • stay home from school | <u>)</u> | | |
| • stay in bed | | | |
| · have a temperature | | | |
| · come down with a cold | | | |
| · cough and sneeze | | | |
| • take a lot of medicines | | | |
| • get better | | | |
| | | | |

Do It on Your Own

- 11 Complete the sentences.
 - 1) What do you usually take ... your headache?
 - 2) Wait a second. I want to write ... two or three prescriptions for you.
 - 3) What's the matter? I'm afraid I'm coming down ... a cold.
 - 4) I hope this medicine will be able to bring ... your temperature.
 - 5) What do doctors usually prescribe ... earache?
 - 6) Cough sweets can cure you ... a painfully sore throat.
 - 7) What's this prescription ...? My painful coughing. 8) I have a bad pain ... my chest. What shall I do?
- 12 Write a short story about how you came down with a cold.

Step Four

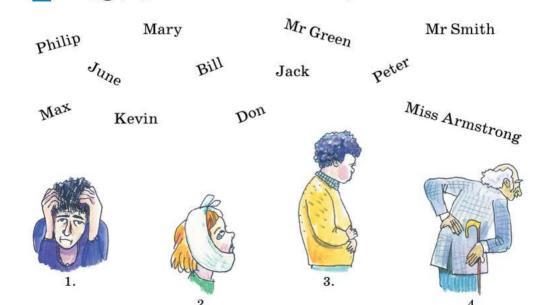
194

5

Unit

Do It Together

1 Listen, (67), and match the names with the pictures.



□)



2 Paraphrase these:

- 1) to have a pain in the back
- 2) to have a pain in the stomach
- 3) to have a pain in the ear
- 4) to have a pain in the head
- 5) to have a pain in the tooth
- 3 How do you know that you are coming down with a cold? What do you usually do to get better?
- 4 Yesterday Richard felt he was coming down with a cold. He went to see his doctor. Read the dialogue and then report the doctor's guestions and Richard's answers. Use the verbs to ask, to explain, to say, to tell, to think, to wonder.

Doctor: Next, please. Ah, good morning, Richard. What can I do for you today? Richard: Well, doctor, I have a running nose and it hurts to swallow.

Doctor: I see. And your cough sounds bad. How long have you had it? When did you begin coughing like that?

Richard: Sorry, Idon't remember, doctor.



12.

Richard: Thank you, doctor. Goodbye. Doctor: Goodbye, Richard. Next, please. **Focus** Обратите внимание на изменения, которые происходят в глагольных формах при переводе предложений из прямой речи в косвенную, если глагол, который вводит прямую речь, стоит в past simple. Kevin said: "I have been coughing for a week." present perfect progressive Kevin explained he had been coughing for a past perfect progressive week. Alice asked Bob: "How long have you been present perfect progrestaking this medicine?" sive Alice wondered how long Bob had been taking that medicine.

past perfect progressive

Doctor: All right. Let me take your temperature first. Oh, you're running a temperature, Richard. I think you have got a

Richard: What can I take to bring down the temperature,

Doctor: Well, I am going to prescribe some medicine for your temperature. Take this medicine three times a day after meals¹.

Example: Dr Morrison said: "John has been sneezing for two days." Dr Morrison explained (thought) John had been sneezing for

Alice asked Bob how long he had been taking

problems. Use the verbs to explain, to think.

two days.

- 1) Dr Morrison said: "Jane has been coughing for a week."
- 2) Dr Morrison said: "Alice has been taking aspirin for three days." 3) Dr Morrison said: "Bob's leg has been hurting him for a

5 A lot of patients² came to see Dr Morrison last Friday. They all had had some problems for some time. Report what Dr Morrison said about his patients'

month." 4) Dr Morrison said: "Mrs Gatewood has been putting on weight for a year."

virus.

doctor?

that medicine.

196

¹ after meals [mi:lz] — после еды ² a patient ['peɪ∫ənt] — пациент

| ; | Say what questions Dr Morrison asked | his patients. | | |
|---|---|--|-----|-----|
| | Example: Dr Morrison wanted to kn — Are you coughing? | ow if his patient was coughing. | 197 | |
| | 1) Dr Morrison wondered how loing. | ng his patient had been cough- | no | |
| | 2) Dr Morrison asked if his patier | nt often had headaches. | ш | |
| | 3) Dr Morrison wanted to know if | | ер | |
| | 4) Dr Morrison wondered if his p side before. | St | | |
| | 5) Dr Morrison asked how long hidiet of vegetables and fruit. | is patient had been keeping to a | | |
| | 6) Dr Morrison asked why his pati | ient hadn't come to see him ear- | | |
| | lier. | | | |
| | 7) Dr Morrison wanted to know overworking himself. | how long his patient had been | | |
| | 8) Dr Morrison asked what medi | cines his nationt had been tak- | | |
| | ing. | emes ms patient nad seen tak | | |
| | 9) Dr Morrison wondered who had | d prescribed those medicines. | | |
| | 10) Dr Morrison wondered if the | | | |
| 1 | Learn how to pronounce and use the | new words. Listen, 🚳 (68), and re- | | -13 |
| | peat. | | | (d) |
| | A. | | | |
| | pastime ['pa:staɪm] — вре- | advantage [ədˈva:ntɪʤ] — пре- | | |
| | мяпровождение | имущество | | |
| | team [ti:m] — команда | thrill [θ rɪl] — 1) n дрожь, | | |
| | $\mathbf{support}$ [sə'pɔ:t] — 1) n под- | трепет, восторг; 2) <i>v</i> заставить трепетать | | |
| | держка; 2) <i>v</i> поддерживать | | | |

5) Dr Morrison said: "Mr Williams has been overworking him-

6) Dr Morrison said: "Ms Sandford has been trying to give up

self for a long time."

гонки

подниматься

smoking for four months."

вить трепетать race [reis] -1) n гонка, бег excitement [ik'saitment] возбуждение, волнение на скорость; 2) участвовать в гонке, в состязании score [skɔ:] — 1) *n* счёт (в игна скорость; бегать напереpe); 2) v выиграть (очко), забить (гол) climb [klaim] — 1) n подъём, восхождение; 2) и лазить,

| | B . | |
|----------|---|--|
| 198 2 | pastime: an unusual pastime, Mary's favourite played word games in the car as a pastime during the team: a football team, a popular team, a famous team match is between two teams of players. support: 1) to support the government, to support support the family. Mr Donovan has to support a Do many people support that candidate? Which for you support? 2) to show support, to give support gave me real support during the difficult times. race: 1) an important race, a difficult race, famou (horse races). Our horse won the race. 2) to race some children raced each other to school. Will you race me climb: 1) A long climb up the mountain. The trip into up the volcano. 2) to climb the mountains, to climb boys climbed the tree and fell down. advantage: an advantage, to give an advantage, to vantage over sb, to get an advantage. The home team advantage over their opponents. Quick thinking tage in many professions. thrill: a great thrill, a pleasant thrill; to give (get) ing the ocean for the first time gave me a great thrill to see the famous runner in person. excitement: real excitement, great excitement. We sleep because of our excitement about starting the row. There was great excitement when the teacher the coming trip. score: 1) The final score. What's the score? The fif to 4. 2) to score a point (some points), to score goals). I scored twenty points in the game. Who score goals). I scored twenty points in the game. | he long drive. Im. A football each other, to large family. otball team do t. My friends s motor races eone. The two e to that tree? cludes a climb the hills. The o have an ad- m always have g is an advan- la thrill. See- hrill. It was a e could hardly the trip tomor- told us about anal score was a goal (some |
| 8 | Match the items in the two columns. | |
| | what you like to do when you are not working a group of people who play sports together on one side | a) climb b) support |
| | 3) to move up, down or across sth using hands and feet 4) to help | c) race d) team |
| | 5) to run to find out who is (the) fastest | e) pastime |

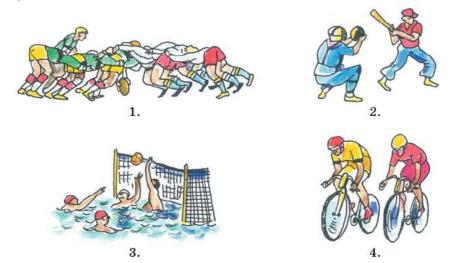
- a) Sport and People
- b) Popular Sports
- c) Sport and Health

of people watch sports programmes on television, support their teams at stadiums ['steidiəmz] and go in for different kinds of sport. Some sports are common, others are not. It is difficult to find a person who has not heard about such team games as football or basketball or such athletics [æ θ 'letiks] as running and jumping. At the same time there are sports and games that are less common, for example motor races, rock climbing and parachute ['pærə[u:t] jumping are not to everyone's taste¹.

Sport is one of the most popular pastimes all over the world. Lots

Going in for sport gives you a lot of advantages. It gives you physical ['fizikl] exercise, you spend a lot of time in the open air, you meet people who enjoy the same sport. Just think of the excitement of the moment when your favourite footballer scores a goal at the last moment of the match.

B. Look at the pictures and match them with the names of sports and games.



¹ are not to everyone's taste = not everybody likes them

2

14. Sports Games h) golf a) boxing i) baseball b) cycling c) long jumping j) ice hockey d) figure skating k) volleyball e) weight lifting 1) badminton f) judo m) water polo g) water skiing n) rugby

C. Read the text again and say which of these facts are not in it.

- 1) Sport is an activity that most people know of and enjoy.
- 2) The most popular sports in England.
- 3) Some sports are more popular than others.
- 4) Sports that are more useful than others.
- 5) Why people go in for sport.6) Some of the best-known athletes.

Слово **sport** означает спортивную деятельность в самом широком смысле, в этом значении это существительное является неисчисляемым.

Do you like sport? Going in for sport is very good for children.

У слова **sport** есть и другое значение — «вид спорта». В этом значении оно исчисляемое.

Football is a popular sport. Basketball has always been one of school sports.

В функции определения перед существительным всегда используйте форму **sports**: sports jacket, sports club, sports news.

- 10 In what sports do they use them?
 - 1) balls: big balls, smaller balls
 - 2) skates 3) rackets
 - 4) racing cars
 - 5) horses
- 11 A. Answer the questions.
 - 1) What traditional Russian games do you know?
 - 2) What sports and games are the most popular in Russia now?
 - 3) What sports are new or uncommon in this country?
 - 4) What summer and winter sports do you know?
 - 5) What sports would you enjoy most? Why?
 - 6) What famous Russian and foreign athletes do you know? In what sports did they become famous?
 - 7) What sports are the most dangerous and the least dangerous?
 - 8) What water sports do you know?
 - 9) What team games do teenagers¹ usually play in Russian schools?
 - 10) Why is it necessary for teenagers to go in for sport?
 - 11) Are there enough stadiums, gyms and swimming pools in the place where you live?
 - 12) What can local and national governments do to make sport more popular?
 - **B.** Explain why sport is so important for everybody.

¹ a teenager [ˈti:neɪʤə] — подросток

Do It on Your Own

12 This is what Julia, a famous sportswoman, said about herself in an interview. Report it to your friends.

Example: Julia said she had always liked sport.

I have always liked sport. I have been skating for about ten years now. I have won some medals and prizes. At this moment I am preparing for something very important. I am going to skate for my town. My friends and I hope to win again. We have been training for two months very hard. I think we are in good form.

13 Write these in English.

Иметь преимущество перед своим другом, взбираться на гору, забить гол, выиграть очко, настоящее волнение, скачки, моё любимое времяпровождение, вызвать трепет (возбуждение), поддерживать друг друга, трудные гонки, бежать с Анной наперегонки, получить настоящую поддержку, трудное восхождение.

Step Five

Do It Together

1 A. Listen, (69), and say if the facts about Laila Ali are true, false or there is no information about them.

口))



- 1) Muhammad Ali is a famous boxer. 2) He has 9 children. 3) He doesn't like the idea of women boxers. 4) People were very interested in Laila's first fight. 5) Muhammad Ali came to see his daughter's first fight. 6) April Fowler was Laila's opponent during the first fight. 7) Laila's first fight lasted less than a minute. 8) Laila has a talent for boxing.
- B. Should there be sports for men only? What sports? Why (not)?

We Shall Overcome¹

We shall overcome, we shall overcome, We shall overcome some day.

Oh, deep in my heart²

I do believe

That we shall overcome some day.

We shall live in peace, we shall live in peace,

We shall live in peace some day.

Oh, deep in my heart

I do believe

That we shall overcome some day.

We'll walk hand in hand, we'll walk hand in hand, We'll walk hand in hand some day.

Oh, deep in my heart I do believe

That we shall overcome some day.



Focus

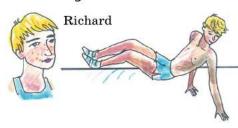
При описании занятий различными видами спорта в английском языке часто используется структура to do sth.

to do boxing to do high jumping to do water skiing to do jumping to do figure skating to do horse riding to do long jumping to do weightlifting

3 Say what it thrills the teenagers to do.

Example: It thrills Bob to do mountain climbing.





to overcome [,əuvə'kʌm] — преодолеть, победить
 a heart [ha:t] — сердце



- Work with a partner, Ask and answer, Report what your partner has said. Do you take enough exercise? What exercise? How often do
- you go to the stadium? to the swimming pool? What is your favourite pastime? Have you ever tried to do
- mountain climbing? When was it? Do you like playing football? Are you a member of the school team? Do you support your school team when they play?
- Do you go in for sport? What sport? Does it thrill you to watch
- motor races? horse races? Do you know any favourite sportsmen or sportswomen? Do you think about your diet? Do you eat things that are good (bad) for you? Do you have enough sleep? Do you take a lot of

medicine? Are you healthy? How often do you see your doctor?



Focus

ture simple, из прямой речи в косвенную вспомогательные глаголы will и shall изменяются соответственно на would и should, если глагол в основном предложении употребляется в past simple. John said: "I will have an advantage over Bob." future simple John said he would have an advantage over Bob. future-in-the-past We said: "We will (shall) win the game."

Обратите внимание, что при переводе предложений, содержащих fu-

We said we would (should) win the game. Alice said: "I will race Pat to the tree."

Report what they said. Use these verbs.

future simple future-in-the-past future simple

future-in-the-past

Alice said she would race Pat to the tree.

tell wonder think want (to know)

Jenny said: "I will play water polo next Sunday."

Peter said: "We shall support our team tomorrow." John said: "I will do a lot of physical exercise soon." Val said: "I will go to the stadium in the evening."

Robert asked: "Shall we go cycling on Saturday?" Mr Cook asked: "Will they play rugby next week?"

Mrs Evans asked: "Where shall we meet?" Miss Ford said: "Who will win the game?"

Ms Cox asked: "Who will play golf?"

205 e

> Œ

Step

Bob and John have different lifestyles¹. Which of them do you think has an advantage and why?

E x a m p l e: Bob has an advantage over John because Bob is strong and active and John is weak.

is fond of playing water polo 206 and rugby 2 gets up early keeps to a healthy diet goes to a goes to the swimming pool Bob stadium regularly 3 times a week does mountain does a lot of climbing in spring physical exercise is strong and active goes to bed late eats a lot gets up late of junk food doesn't have takes a lot John enough of sleep of different medicines hardly ever goes is weak to the stadium prefers to watch dislikes physical sport and games

on TV

exercise

¹ lifestyle ['laɪfstaɪl] — образ жизни

competition: an important competition, to win the competition.

Our team was in competition with three others. I think I'll enter the swimming competition.

performance: an evening performance, an afternoon performance the actor's performance. We all enjoyed last night's per-

mance, the actor's performance. We all enjoyed last night's performance of the school play. His performance of/as Othello [əˈθeləʊ] was very good.

event: an important event. The first day at school is a big event in a child's life. The next event will be the high jump.

war: at war, to start a war, to go to war. In 1775 England was at war with her American colonies. They were a warlike nation.

peace: Peace on the planet is very important for all of us.

here: to become a here, a national here. The winners of the Olym-

hero: to become a hero, a national hero. The winners of the Olympic Games are national heroes.

organize: to organize a meeting, to organize a trip. Our teacher has organized a class trip to Stratford-upon-Avon.

organization: She is busy with the organization of her daugh-

ter's party. The letters UNO stand for the United Nations Organization. **noble:** a noble person, a noble profession, a noble family, noble thoughts. Mr Patrik Morgan comes from a noble family. **field:** a green field, in the field, on a football field. We could see

a farmer in the field. The players have just come out onto the football field.

battle: to fight a battle, the Battle of Trafalgar. Battles happen during wars. The two armies fought a battle.

is a great honour to meet you.

take part in: Who will take part in the swimming competition?

John hardly ever takes part in our meetings.

take place: The meeting took place on 17 March. What took place after the performance?

honour: a great honour, a big honour. He is a man of honour. It

Focus

on the battle field — на поле боя

Обратите внимание на употребление предлогов со словом **field**. in the field — на поле on the football field — на футбольном поле

9 Use the new words and complete the sentences.

1) Our team will c... with the best athletes of the town. 2) Who will take p... in our concert? 3) All the people of Russia remember the b... of Stalingrad which took p... in 1943. 4) I have never seen any international boating c.... 5) Where shall we go after the p...? 6) The two countries have never been at w.... 7) Many people say that Pavel Bure is our national h.... 8) Andrei Dmitrievich Saharov was a man of h.... 9) We drove past large green f...s and could see bright yellow dandelions here and there. 10) What do you know about the B... of Trafalgar? about the B... of Waterloo? 11) Mahatma Gandi, the n... leader of the Indian people, is famous all over the world. 12) Have you read "W... and P..." by Leo Tolstoy? 13) The a... castle gave the city of Newcastle its name. 14) "Greenpeace" is a world-famous ecological o....

209

Step FIV

10 A. The text "The Olympic Games" falls into two parts. Read the text and make up titles for these parts.













a) ... The Olympic Games are an international sports festival that began in ancient Greece. In those days Greek games took place every four years. They included

not only sports competitions but also competitions in music, oratory¹ and theatre performances. The earliest information about the Olympic Games goes back to 776 BC, but historians think that the Games began long before that. The ancient Olympics had only one athletic event — a footrace or a race for runners of about 183 metres (the length

of the stadium). Only men could com-



the country. When the powerful, warlike² Spartans began to compete, they changed the programme of the Games and included more sports in it. The winners of the Games became national heroes. The Roman emperor³ Theodosius [θιρ'dəusjəs] ended the Olympics in 394 AD because he thought that they were a pagan⁴ festival.

b) ... In the 19th century the French nobleman Pierre de Coubertin

['pjer də 'kub3:tən] got the idea to bring the Olympic Games back to life. With the help of the people who supported him he organized the first modern Olympic Games in 1896. They were a success. Athletes from thirteen countries came to Greece to compete in nine sports. Russia took part in them, too. Now the number of countries taking part in the Olympic Games is much larger and so is the number of sports in which athletes compete. Like in ancient times, the Olympic Games take place every four years, yet in 1926 the tradition of the Winter Olympic Games also began. The noble idea of the Olympic Games is to make all people

friends by competing on football fields, courts and stadiums.

¹ oratory ['prətəri] — ораторское искусство

² warlike = liking war

³ an emperor ['empərə] — император 4 pagan [ˈpeɪgən] — языческий

Games like? Compare them. Example: In ancient times only one country took part in the Olympic Games. Now a lot of countries do it. your classmates remember:

to become an Olympic one.

al heroes in their countries.

1) ...? — In ancient Greece. 2) ...? — Every four years.

and theatre performances.

which these are answers.

B. Listen, (12), and read the text again after it.

4) ...? — Only one. It was a footrace. 5) ...? — In 394 AD. 6) ...? — Because he believed that they were unchristian. 7) ...? — His name was Pierre de Coubertin. 8) ...? — Yes. He had some supporters. 9) ...? — In 1896. 10) ...? — In Greece. 11) ...? — The IOC.

12) ...? — They choose the city for the next Olympics.

B. Why do you think a lot of countries want to host Olympic Games?

12 A. What were ancient Olympic Games like and what are modern Olympic

The International Olympic Committee [kəˈmɪti] (IOC) heads the Olympic movement. Among other things the Committee chooses the place for the coming Olympics. It is a great honour for a city

The Olympic Games are probably the most important international sports event. Millions of people watch them, supporting their favourite teams and athletes. Many things have changed

but like in ancient times winners of the Olympics become nation-

11 A. Read the text "The Olympic Games" again and make up questions to

3) ...? — No. They also included competitions in music, oratory

口()

211

>

0

B. Do you know anything about the latest 1 Olympic Games? Together with

- when and in what city they took place which of the countries won the most medals.
- 1 latest ['leitist] последние, недавние

- what athletes were successful
 how good the Russian team was
 - · what competition or match you remember best and why
 - C. Has Russia ever hosted Olympic Games? Is it going to? What do you know about them?

5

Social English

13 A. Learn to make proposals and react to them.

Making proposals

- Let's watch the final match on TV.What/How about playing a game of tennis?
- I feel like jogging this morning, will you join me?
- Why don't you play for the school team?Why not take part in this race?

Saying yes

I'd love to (do it).

- I'd be glad to (do it).
- I'd like that very much.
- That sounds good.OK.
- All right.
- With pleasure ['pleʒə].

Saying *no*• I'm afraid I can't.

- I'd love to but I'm afraid I can't.
 I'm sorry but I really can't.
- B. Work with a partner. Make a proposal. Say yes or no.

- Your idea is that:
- he/she should spend a quiet evening at home
- you both should play a game of chess
- he/she should start doing some physical exercise
- ne/sne should start doing some physical exercise
 he/she should learn to play baseball
- you both should watch the hockey match on TV
- he/she should join the school athletic club
 he/she should take part in the 100-metre race
- he/she should take part in the 100-metre race
 he/she should take pictures of the skiing competition
 you both should try to keep fit

Do It on Your Own

14 Use prepositions where necessary.

- 1) Richard has an advantage ... his friends, he goes ... the stadium regularly. 2) Everyone knows that it's very hard to climb ...
- Everest. 3) I am afraid that ice hockey is not quite ... my taste.
- 4) You say you are a good runner. Race me ... the school building

two teams are already ... the football field. They have just come

out ... it. 9) The Battle ... Waterloo took place in 1815 near Brussels, Belgium. 10) We are competing ... our neighbours, school

and we shall see. 5) How many countries took part ... the latest Olympic Games? 6) The boy who has won ... the 100-metre race is my best friend. 7) I can see two cows ... the field. 8) Look! The

1220, in basketball.

What Do You Think? 15 Which of these proverbs are true? Explain why.

- 1) Health is better than wealth.
- 2) Hitch your wagon to the star. 3) Every medal has two sides.

Check Your Progress

16 Write TEST 5 (Workbook 2, pp. 85—89) and check your results.

| Tasks | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | Total |
|----------------|----|---|---|----|---|---|----|----|-------|
| Maximum result | 10 | 6 | 5 | 11 | 4 | 5 | 10 | 14 | 65 |
| Your result | | | | | | | | | |

213

Step



Our Favourite Pastimes

Step One

Do It Together

1 A. Listen, 🔇 (73), and put the right names into these sentences.



Their Free Time

- 1) ... does maths after school.
- 2) ... has very little free time because there are two young children in the house.
- 3) ... meets friends at weekends.
- 4) ... does a lot of sport.
- 5) ... likes to spend free time with friends.
- 6) ... travels about the country at weekends.
- **B.** Do you think a hobby can influence your future life? In what way? Give examples.



You and Your Fre

You and Your Free Time

215

C

0

1) How much free time do you have?

2 How would you answer these questions about your free time?

- a) more than 3 hours a dayb) between 1 and 3 hours a day
- c) less than 1 hour a day
- 2) Do you budget¹ your free time?
 - a) yes b) no c) sometimes
- 3) In what way do you prefer to spend your free time?
 - a) stay indoors and relax f) do sport
 - a) stay indoors and relax f) do sport b) watch TV and video films g) spend it on self-educa-
 - d) meet your friends h) spend it on your family e) travel i) spend it some other way
- 4) What is your usual pastime or pastimes?
- 5) Are you happy about the way you spend your free time?
 a) yes
 b) no
 c) not always

tion

- 6) What would you like to change?
- Focus

c) read books

cus

The Passive Voice²

Все уже известные вам глагольные формы были использованы в так называемом активном залоге (the active voice), когда глагол показывает, что действие выполняется лицом или предметом, выраженным подлежащим.

Richard broke the window yesterday.

Susan wrote the project last Sunday.

формы основного глагола.

Однако <u>обычно</u>, когда говорящий либо не знает, кто совершает действие, либо не придаёт этому значения, в предложении используется страдательный залог (the passive voice). В английском языке страдательный залог образуется с помощью вспомогательного глагола to be и третьей

¹ to budget ['bʌʤɪt] — распределять ² the passive voice — страдательный залог

was/were translated = был/были переведены was/were played = был/были сыграны was/were shown = был/были показаны was/were read = был/были прочитаны

Если же возникает необходимость назвать лицо, которое совершает действие, пользуются предлогом by.

The book was written by Joanne Rowling.

Обратите внимание, что одно и то же предложение в страдательном залоге может переводиться на русский язык по-разному.

The letter was sent last evening.

1) Письмо было отослано вчера вечером. 2) Письмо отослали вчера вече-

1) The castle was built in the 17th century. 2) The books were brought from the library. 3) The lunch was eaten in no time. 4) These cameras were made in Japan. 5) The English language was spoken only in England in the 16th century. 6) The living

9 p.m. 10) The work was done at once. 11) America was discov-

3 Translate these sentences into Russian.

ром.

ered in 1492.

Для прошедшего времени это:

- room was cleaned an hour ago. 7) Two bottles of mineral water were drunk because it was very hot. 8) The vegetables were brought in the morning. 9) The boy was asked to come back at
- 4 Change the sentences in the active voice into passive.
- Example: The team played the match year we
- E x a m p l e: The team played the match very well.

 The match was played very well (by the team).
- The match was played very well (by the team).

 1) John found a small silver box in the garden. 2) Mr Morrison
 - hung the picture on the wall. 3) Jason learnt the poem by heart.
 4) Our school football team won the final match with the score
 - 4) Our school football team won the final match with the score 5:2. 5) The girls did the exercises after classes. 6) Barbara took these pictures while travelling in Africa. 7) Jane chose the blue

dress because it was longer. 8) Mr Harrison built the cottage at the beginning of the 19th century. 9) Alice cut the cake into small pieces. 10) Mrs Biggs kept the old letters in a small green box.

| 5 | Look at the sentences and say how negations and questions are made in the passive voice. | | | | | |
|--------------|--|--|--|------|--|--|
| | $\overline{\left(-\right)}$ | The floor was not cleaned last night. The cars were not washed in the evening. | | | | |
| | (?) | Was the book bought last weekend? Were the churches built last century? | | | | |
| | When were the apples bought? Where was the car made? Why were the letters burnt? | | | | | |
| 6 | Disagree ¹ | with the statements. Correct th | nem using the passive voice. | Step | | |
| | Exampl | dents | s were not collected by the teacher, tudents. | | | |
| | everyboo | essor Jackson informed ly about the lecture. broke their mother's fa- | not Professor Jackson, Pro- fessor Davidson not John, Florence | | | |
| | | Sarah built a small sand- the beach. | not Sarah, little Alice | | | |
| | 4) Emma low. | a painted the door yel- | not Emma, her little brother Steve | | | |
| | 5) Touris | sts killed a lot of dodos. | not tourists, sailors | | | |
| | 6) Mario fridge. | n took two eggs from the | not Marion, Sharon | | | |
| | 7) Henry the game | y scored the last goal in | not Henry, Max | | | |
| | 8) Mr Ja Plan B. | son preferred Plan A to | not Plan A, Plan B | | | |
| | 9) Miss I the list. | Harper included Tom on | not Tom, Boris | | | |
| - | 1 to disagr | ree [ˌdɪsəˈgri:] — не соглашаться | , возражать | | | |

| Unit 6 | The sandcastle was built. The story was told. The new land was discovered. Some species of animals were killed. A lot of historic facts were remembered. The trees were cut down. | | | | | |
|--------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| | 8) A lot of power stations were built. | | | | | |
| | 9) Some rivers were polluted. 10) Some money was collected. | | | | | |
| | 8 Work in pairs. Ask and answer. | | | | | |
| | You want to know: | | | | | |
| | 1) when America was discovered a) 1392 b) 1492 c) 1429 | | | | | |
| | 2) on what continents rainforests were mostly destroyed a) Europe c) North America | | | | | |
| | b) Australia d) South America e) Asia | | | | | |
| | 3) when "Eugene Onegin" was written a) 1823—1831 b) 1832—1837 c) 1810—1819 | | | | | |
| | 4) when Moscow was founded ¹ | | | | | |
| | a) 1047 b) 1147 c) 1417 | | | | | |
| | 5) when the electron was discovered a) 1807 b) 1877 c) 1897 | | | | | |
| | 6) when the Second World War was finished | | | | | |
| | a) 1945 b) 1948 c) 1946 | | | | | |
| | 7) who "Robinson Crusoe" was written bya) Daniel Defoeb) Jonathan Swiftc) Rudyard Kipling | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

7 Ask questions to get more information about these facts. Give answers.

Last week.

At the Congress.

By everyone. It was really good.

When was his plan supported?

Where was his plan supported?

Why was the plan supported?

By whom was the plan supported?

Example: Kevin's plan was supported.

1) The poem was written.

10) by whom "The Mona Lisa" was painted a) Michelangelo [ˌmaɪklˈænʤələu] b) Leonardo da Vinci [li:əˌna:dəu də ˈvɪntʃi] c) Raffaello Santi [ˌræfeɪəlɔ: ˈsænti]

b) Lyon

11) when "The Mona Lisa" was painted b) 1403 a) 1603

8) when the first clock was made a) in the early Middle Ages b) in the late Middle Ages

9) where the Eiffel Tower was built

c) in ancient times

a) Dijon

a) 1903

- c) 1503
- 12) when the first plane was flown by the Wright brothers b) 1913 c) 1923
- Listen, (1), and read what these people say about their interests. Whose interests do you share 1? Hi! I'm Nina. I go to school in St Petersburg. My school is not usual. We study a lot of chem-

c) Paris

- istry and biology. Biology is my favourite subject. I have always been interested in wildlife. After school I spend most of my time in the club. We call ourselves "Young Biologists". We meet two times a week to discuss some interesting problems. During school holidays we go to
- and study their ecology. I keep some pets at home too. I like playing with them and looking after2 them.

different places where we can watch wildlife

I'm Mark. I live in Liverpool, England. My hobby is music. We have the Beatles Museum in Liverpool which I have visited many times. I have a big collection of books about the musicians and a lot of their recordings³. I think there is nothing that I don't know about the

³ a recording — запись







219

_



¹ to share [∫eə] — разделять 2 to look after — заботиться

group. Of all the musicians I like John Lennon most. He had many hit songs. Lennon was killed in 1980 by a mad¹ fanatic. But people in different countries remember him.

Hi there! I'm Andy Scott. I come from Sacra-

mento, California, USA. I think I spend all my free time playing basketball. I play for the school team and they say that I'm one of the best players. I go to the stadium to watch basketball games with my dad or with my friends. I support the LA Lakers, they are the best team in the NBA². If I can ever play for Lakers, I'll be the happiest person in the world.

My name is Denis. I live in Vladivostok, in the east of Russia. My hobby is computers. I got a computer two years ago and now I spend a lot of my free time in front of it. Sometimes my friends and I go to the Internet café and surf the net³. I used to play a lot of computer games but now I think they are rather boring. Using the computer helps me with my school as I can

get all the information I need from the Internet.

I'm Julia and I come from Scotland. I have a hobby that is not very common nowadays — I read books. Very few of my classmates do any reading at all. They prefer television or videos, but I love reading a lot. I go to the local library and read books there. I'm very lucky because my parents have a good home library and I can take any book I like. My friends call me a bookworm⁴, but they like it when I tell them what I have read in books. I think I could spend all my life reading. That's the most exciting pastime







I can think of.

¹ **mad** — безумный, сумасшедший

² NBA = National Basketball Association
³ to surf the net = to move from site to site on the Interne

³ to surf the net = to move from site to site on the Internet 4 a bookworm ['bokw3:m] — книжный червь

10 Speak about your hobby or favourite pastime and find out who else in your class is interested in the same activity.

221

Do It on Your Own

11 The active voice or the passive voice? 1. a) Cristopher Columbus (discover) America in 1492. b) No-

I have always been interested in

I have a big collection of

It's a rather (un)common hobby.

I think it's an exciting pastime.

I spend a lot of time (doing something)

There is very little that I don't know about

- body knows when this fact (discover).
- 2. a) The Post Office Tower in London (build) in 1964. b) It (build) to make the telephone and television systems of the British capital better. c) Who (build) the Tretyakov Gallery in Mos-
- cow? 3. a) The small island (not, show) on the map. b) Mrs Pitkin (not, show) me her garden when I came to visit her.
- 4. a) Mr Woodriff (paint) very good portraits when he was younger. b) A lot of strange animals (paint) on the wall. We couldn't see all of them.
- 5. Jonathan Swift (write) "Gulliver's Travels" in the 18th century, "Battle of the Books" (write) by him too.
- 12 Write these sentences in the passive voice.
 - 1) People grew this coffee in Brazil.
 - 2) Someone made this piano in the 18th century.
 - 3) Somebody sent a Christmas postcard to me. 4) Somebody bought a lot of vegetables and put them in the
 - fridge.
 - 5) Andrew took us to the living room.
 - 6) People killed the last dodo many years ago.
 - 7) They built a new hospital in our city last month.
 - 8) People translated this book into many languages. 9) They taught reading in the first form.

222

9

Unit

Do It Together

- 1 A. Listen to the text, (3) (75), about William Shake-speare and his home town and say which facts are true, false or not mentioned in it.
 - 1) William Shakespeare was born in 1546.
 - 2) One of William's grandfathers was a farmer.
 - 3) William's family was not poor.
 - 4) William went to a grammar school.
 - 5) In the 16th century Stratford was a rather small town.
 - 6) There were about 2,000 houses in it.
 - 7) Stratford stands on a river.
 - 8) The name of the river is Avon.
 - 9) Now Stratford is a tourist centre.
 - 10) The house where William Shakespeare was born is a museum now.
 - 11) In the museum one can see not only some 16th century books but also a collection of 16th century clothes.
 - 12) The museum garden is not a usual one.





- **B.** Why do you think Shakespeare is still remembered? What modern authors will be remembered in 400 years?
- 2 On Saturday the Greens had lots of things to do. They worked very hard and at the end of the day everything was done. What was done by the Greens?

Example: Mr Green spent two hours washing the car, so the car was washed.

- 1) Mr Green spent the afternoon making a bench, so
- 2) Mrs Green spent a lot of time planting the flowers and cutting the grass, so
- 3) Jake Green spent an hour and a half painting the garage, so
- 4) Margo Green spent three hours cleaning the windows in the house, so

¹ to mention ['men[ən] — упоминать

- 2. Someone showed me a new dictionary. Кто-то показал мне новый словарь. A new dictionary was shown to me. — Мне показали новый словарь. I was shown a new dictionary. При этом второй вариант является более употребительным.

- Cp.: I was told a very interesting story. Мне рассказали очень интересную
- историю. They were asked about the score of the game. — Их спросили о счёте игры.
- Sarah was given two sweets. Саре дали две конфеты.
- Bob was shown the new library. Бобу показали новую библиотеку.
 - 4 Read the sentences and say how present simple passive is formed. Then translate the sentences into Russian.

African languages are not usually taught in Russian

What kind of music is played at Christmas in your coun-

- I am told to come back at 5. Coffee is grown in Brazil. Butter and cheese are made from milk.
- schools. I am not included in the team. This poem is not translated into French.
- **Are** the Hobsons **invited** to your party? Is English spoken here?

Why are you asked to go there?

try?

224

- 5 Change the active voice into passive.
 - 1) We form the passive voice with the help of the verb to be.
 - 2) People grow oranges in Italy.
 - 3) They build a lot of new houses in our country.

 - 4) People often make tables of plastic ['plæstik]. 5) They translate the Harry Potter books into many languages.
 - 6) They don't teach foreign languages at this primary school.
 - They don't show such films on TV. 8) My granny doesn't grow tomatoes here.

9) People don't build tall buildings on this island. 10) What questions does your teacher usually ask you in class? 11) Do you hear such melodies here? 12) What books do they usually buy for their children? 13) Does Mr Ross usually invite his neighbours to his parties? 14) What poems do the pupils learn by heart in the 8th form? 6 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words. Listen, ♠ (76), and re-225 peat. 0 A. × L entertainment [entə temmənt] circus ['sз:kəs] — цирк connect [kəˈnekt] — соедиразвлечение act [ækt] - 1) действовать, понять, подключать ступать; 2) играть в пьесе или consider [kənˈsɪdə] — считать, полагать (рассматфильме possible [ˈpɒsəbl] — возможривать, тщательно обдумывать) ный impossible [ɪmˈpɒsəbl] — невозappear [ə'ріә] — появлятьможный СЯ god [god] — for play [plei] — пьеса recite [rɪˈsaɪt] — декламироaudience ['ɔ:diəns] — аудивать, читать наизусть тория, публика, зрители introduce [ˌɪntrəˈdju:s] — предas well — также, тоже ставлять кого-либо, вводить by and by — постепенно куда-то B. entertainment: real entertainment, the usual entertainment, the world of entertainment, to enjoy entertainment. I think all people enjoy entertainment. Let's take a look at the world of entertainment. Cinema is the entertainment of the 20th century. act: to act as sb, to act quickly, to act in a performance. We have talked enough, it's time to act. Helen sometimes acts as her father's secretary. A famous actor, a popular actress. possible: a possible visit, it is possible that..., if (it is) possible, as soon as possible, when/whenever possible, where/wherever possible. Everything is possible. I relax with a good book wherever possible. impossible: impossible children. It is impossible for elephants to fly. god: In ancient Greece people had a lot of gods. Mars was the Roman god of war.

口))

God (no plural): God is the being who made the world and controls all things.

recite: to recite a poem, to recite a dialogue. Alice had to recite her poem in front of her class.

introduce: to introduce sb to somebody, to introduce actors to a

play. My parents introduced me to their guests. Let me introduce myself. He introduced himself as Doctor Desmond Morton. circus: to go to the circus, to take sb to the circus. My little

granddaughter asks me to take her to the circus again. connect: to connect sth to/with sth (sb), to connect the printer to the computer, to connect the two farms. How are you connected with the business? We are not connected to the Internet.

ering my idea. I'm seriously considering leaving the company. Professor Harvey is considered (to be) a real expert. appear: to appear on television (in the film), to appear from the room, to appear from behind the tree. One day a stranger appeared on my doorstep.

consider: to consider facts, to consider doing sth. Max is consid-

disappear: to disappear suddenly. The sun disappeared behind the clouds.

reappear = to appear again.play: a modern play, a funny play, an exciting play. People be-

lieve that Shakespeare wrote 37 plays. audience: an unusual audience, a thankful audience, a young au-

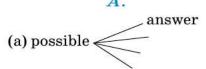
dience. Audiences all over the world loved Chaplin's films. offer: to offer entertainment, to offer a cup of coffee, to offer to

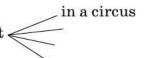
help. They haven't offered me the job yet. We'll be happy to offer you all the help we can. as well = too = also. Buy some potatoes, please, and some carrots

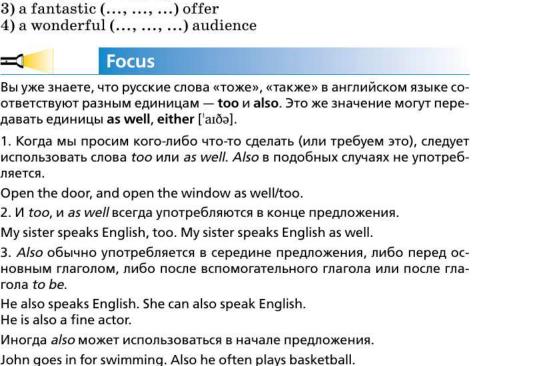
as well. by and by = after a short time. By and by they got to know each

other.

7 Complete the rows of words.







4. Обычно also не используется в отрицательных предложениях. В этом

to connect.

to consider <

nations

in a play

the problem

227

a writer

a text

1) real (..., ...) entertainment

случае употребляется слово either.

I don't know him either. If you don't go, I won't either.

2) a sad (..., ..., ...) play

to introduce €

to recite <

to offer.

口())

8 Complete the sentences using also, as well, either or too.

228

school year.

nit 6

5 and do exercise 6 3) Does Mr Gordon ... live in Oxford?

4) I went home early, and John did 5) I never read such fairy tales to little children 6) We can ... buy tickets for this show.

1) Vera speaks English and she ... speaks Chinese. 2) Do exercise

7) "Harry Potter" is a children's book. "Peter Pan" is ... a book for children. 8) We haven't seen "Titanic" 9) Translate the text and write exercise one

guage.
2) The drama ['dra:mə] of A.P. Chekhov is very well known in

1) **Prehistoric** [pri:hi'storik] people did not have a developed lan-

the world.

3) We **organized** ['b:gənaɪzd] a party to celebrate the end of the

4) A chorus ['kɔ:rəs] is a group of people who sing together.

5) D'Artagnan is the main **character** [ˈkærəktə] of "The Three Musketeers" by Alexandre Dumas.
6) "Othello" is a **tragedy** [ˈtræʤədi] and "Twelfth Night" is a **com**-

edy ['kpmədi] by William Shakespeare.7) Spartacus is probably the most famous Roman gladiator

[ˈglædieɪtə].
8) We sat near the **arena** [əˈriːnə] and could see the circus animals

very well.

9) Easter and Christmas are **religious** [rəˈlɪʤəs] festivals.

10) The Renaissance [ri'neis(ə)ns] was the period in Europe between the 14th and 17th centuries, when the art, literature and ideas of ancient Greece were discovered again and widely studied.

11) A moral ['mprəl] person always does the right things.12) I forgot the words of the song and had to improvise

['imprəvaiz]. Everyone laughed.

13) The speaker stood on a high platform ['plætfɔ:m] and all the

people around could see and hear him well.

14) At our geography lessons we use a lot of maps and a big globe [glaub].

[gləub].
15) A. N. Ostrovsky was one of the best Russian dramatists

['dræmətists], he wrote a lot of interesting plays.

16) Have you ever been to a concert ['konsət] of classical music?

B. Read the new words again, learn to pronounce them right.

4) We know two kinds of Greek drama. 5) Greek tragedies always ended in the most important character 229 dving. 6) There were new forms of entertainment introduced by ancient N L Romans. 7) In the Middle Ages the church didn't let the theatre develop freely. 8) The first performances took place in the streets. 9) The Renaissance was the time when the theatre developed fast and became very important. 10) Comedies and tragedies by William Shakespeare were written in the Golden Age of Theatre. 11) Cinema is the most popular of modern entertainments. 12) Television has become the number one entertainment for modern people. The History of Entertainment Nearly everyone enjoys entertainment. The beginnings of popular entertainment go back to prehistoric times, when dance, music and story-telling were very important. The traditions of entertainment began in ancient Greece about 2,500 years ago with the development of Greek drama. In those days festivals were organized to celebrate Dionysus [daiə naisəs], the Greek god of wine and new life, with song and dance. Later poets began to write stories for a large group of performers (a chorus and an actor to recite). Then another actor was introduced which made a dialogue between characters possible. There were two forms of classical ['klæsikl] Greek drama — tragedy and comedy. The Romans continued the traditions of Greece and developed other kinds of entertainment as well. The beginnings of the circus are connected with gladiators fighting in public arenas.

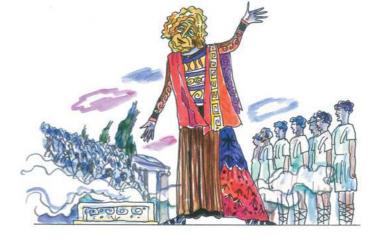
10 A. Read the text below and say which of these ideas are not in it.

2) Prehistoric people had special places for singing, dancing and

3) Greek drama was the first public entertainment in Europe.

1) The history of entertainment is very old.

story-telling.



In the Middle Ages¹ the church considered entertainment and drama wrong, but by and by drama reappeared with religious and moral plays.

In the time of Renaissance the theatre became less religious and there was a new interest in Greek and Roman drama. Common people² preferred comedies performed by a travelling group of actors. At first, the actors had no text, only an idea of what was going to happen and had to improvise. They usually performed on high platforms in public places. The actors offered entertainment which included plays, songs and dances.

The Golden Age of Theatre began when the first special theatres were built. The first of such theatres was opened in London in 1652. Soon there appeared a few others including the famous Globe Theatre. Among the writers who worked for these theatres was William Shakespeare, one of the greatest dramatists in any language. Shakespeare gave his audience great literature but at the same time he gave them popular entertainment.

Nowadays people entertain themselves by listening to music, watching TV programmes, films and videos, going to concerts and circus shows but the theatre is still among our favourite entertainments.

B. Listen, (178), and read the text again after it.

¹ the Middle Ages — Средние века

² common people — простые люди

nowadays. 11 Read the text "The History of Entertainment" again and say the same in one word.

C. Say what makes the theatre a favourite entertainment for many people

- Example: A theatre or a film show, a concert, etc. entertainment.
- 1) Belonging to the time before history was written down.
- 2) Belonging to the time of very long ago.
- 3) Plays for acting.
- 4) A group of people singing together.
- 5) Talk between two people, often in films or plays.
- 6) A person in a play, film or story.
- 7) A drama about sad events with a sad end.
- 8) A show with performances by acrobats ['ækrəbæts], clowns
- [klaunz] and animals, often travelling from place to place.
- 9) The period between the 11th and 15th centuries in Europe.
- 10) A writer working for the theatre.
- 11) People watching or listening to a performance. 12) Musical entertainment.
- 12 Answer the questions. 1) Were music, dancing and story-telling in prehistoric times
 - forms of entertainment or were they connected with magic¹? 2) In which country did the history of drama begin? When did it
 - happen? What event was it connected with?
 - 3) Who(m) did they call an "actor" in ancient Greece? 4) What are the two forms of classical Greek drama?
 - 5) What do you know about Euripides [ju: ripidi:z] and Sophocles ['spfəkli:z]?
 - 6) What popular modern entertainment began in ancient Rome? 7) Why weren't the Middle Ages the best time for the develop-
 - ment of drama?

time is considered to be the Golden Age of Theatre?

- 8) What did Renaissance people rediscover?
- 9) What were theatrical performances like before real theatres appeared? 10) How do you understand the meaning of Golden Age? What
- ¹ magic [ˈmæʤɪk] магия

231

- 11) How much do you know about William Shakespeare? 12) What are the most popular forms of entertainment today?
- Which of them do you prefer?

232

9

Do It on Your Own

- 13 A. Write who these pictures were painted by.

1) "Morning in the Pine Forest"

- a) Claude Monet
- b) Victor Vasnetsov
- c) Leonardo Da Vinci
- d) Vincent Van Gogh
- e) Karl Bryullov
- f) Ivan Shishkin



2) "The Horsewoman"





6) "Waterlily Pond"



5) "Sunflowers"



- **B.** Write who these books were written by.
 - "Life on the Mississippi"
 "Harry Potter and the Philosopher's
 - Stone"
 - 3) "Peter Pan"
 - 4) "Peter Pan"
 4) "Oliver Twist"
 - 5) "Robinson Crusoe" 6) "War and Peace"

b) Joanne Rowling c) Mark Twain

a) Leo Tolstoy

- d) Daniel Defoe
- e) Charles Dickens
- f) James M. Barry

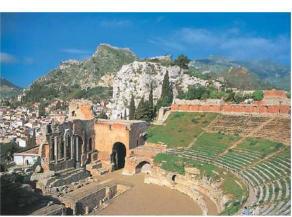
Three

233

Step Three

Do It Together

- 1 Listen to the dialogues, **(3)** (79), and say where they are taking place.
- Complete the text with theatre words. Check, (20).
 The theatre at Delphi in Greece was built in the 300s BC. It was so well built that even people sitting right at the back could hear every word the actors spoke.



Theatre

A th... is a place where p...s are performed by a...s and watched by an au....

The earliest theatres we know about were in Greece where d... in the form of t...s and c...s was enjoyed by theatre lovers. Greek theatres looked like big stadiums open to the sky, but they were





口))

Roman th...s looked like Greek th...s. The Romans built a th... in nearly every large town in the country. Some of the Greek and Roman d...s are remembered today and their p...s are performed in modern th...s. 3 Read out the sentences in the passive voice from exercise 2. 234 9 4 Read the sentences and say how future passive is formed. Then translate the sentences into Russian. Ann will be invited to the party. The room will be cleaned tomorrow. The fruit will be bought on Sunday. Tom won't be helped. The letter won't be sent tomorrow. The cake won't be made by granny. Will flowers be grown here? ? Will the tickets be brought in the morning? Will the story be translated soon?

so well built that everyone could see and hear the p...ers well.

- 5 Say the same in a different way. Use the passive voice.
 - 1) We'll remember the play.

When will the car be washed?

Why will the letter be written in French?

Where will the flowers be planted?

- 2) People heard a loud noise in the garden.
- 3) Ann won't clean the carpet tomorrow.
- 4) She will do it next Saturday.

Wh?

- 5) What will you grow in the kitchen garden in summer?
- 6) I won't forget your help.
- 7) They speak only English in their club.
- 8) They did not include all endangered birds into the list.
- 9) They will make a discovery soon.
- 10) Will somebody draw the emblem of our club?

235

В английском языке в страдательном залоге употребляются также глаголы, которые требуют после себя предлога: to talk about, to send for, to listen to, to look at, to think of, to look after, to laugh at, to speak to/about, to ask for, to wait for. В страдательном залоге эти предлоги всегда сохраняются.

He is much spoken about. — О нём много говорят.

The doctor was sent for. — 3a доктором послали.

She is often waited for. — Её часто ждут.

Such jokes are not laughed at. — Над такими шутками не смеются.

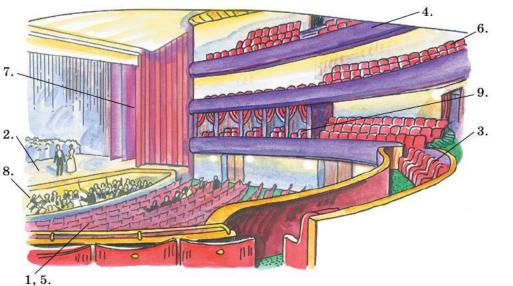
The children will be looked after. — За детьми присмотрят.

John will be spoken to. — С Джоном поговорят.

6 How can you say the same using the passive voice?

- 1) People speak a lot about this film. 2) They spoke to Mr Hardson. 3) My cousins will look after my pet. 4) People will laugh at you. 5) They sent for my parents. 6) The boy is so unusual, everybody looks at him. 7) People often ask for such dictionaries. 8) Nobody spoke to me in such a way. 9) People will never talk
- about such things. 10) I'm sure everybody will listen to Harry.

Look at the pictures and read the theatre words. Check, (81).



口))

A.

 \boldsymbol{B} .

236

9

Unit

1) stalls [sto:lz] 2) stage [steich]

3) balcony ['bælkəni]

4) gallery [ˈgæləri]

5) rows [rəuz] of seats [si:ts]

6) circle ['s3:kl] 7) curtain ['k3:tn]

8) orchestra pit ['ɔ:kɪstrə pɪt]

9) box



10) cloakroom ['kləukrum]



12) box office ['boks pfis]



14) ballet ['bælei]



13) buffet ['bufei]



15) opera ['pp(ə)rə]



16) programme ['prəugræm]



17) opera glasses ['pp(ə)rə ˌgla:sız]



18) costume ['kɒstjum]



Focus

С обозначением мест в театре употребляется предлог *in*: in the stalls, in the box, in the balcony, in Row B, но: on the stage.

8 A. Listen to the dialogue "At the Box Office", 🚳 (82), and act it out.

At the Box Office

A: Hello. How can I help you?

B: I'd like two seats for tomorrow.

A: Morning or evening performance?

B: Evening, please.

A: Where do you want your seats?

B: In the stalls, back or middle rows.

A: I am sorry, but the stalls are sold out¹. We have two good seats in a box at 35 pounds.

B: That's more than I wanted to pay.

A: Then I can offer you two seats in the circle, front row, at 12 pounds.

B: I think I'll take those. Thanks very much.

A: You're welcome.

B. Can you buy a theatre ticket? Work in pairs and practise.



237

¹ are sold [səʊld] out — проданы

impression [im'pre(n] — впе-

applause [əˈplɔ:z] — аплодис-

applaud [əˈplɔ:d] — аплоди-

to go down/up — гаснуть/за-

гораться (об огнях, свете)

at last — наконец

rise [raiz] — подниматься scenery ['si:nəri] — декора-

чатление

пии

менты

ровать

пригла-

invite [in'vait] шать

A.

invitation [ˌɪnvɪˈteɪʃn] — приглашение

arrive [əˈraɪv] — прибывать

ticket ['tikit] — билет expensive [ik'spensiv] — дорогой (о цене, стоимости)

fantastic [fæn'tæstik] — фантастический, потрясающий impress [im'pres] — произво-

дить впечатление

B.

invite: to invite sb to/for sth, to invite to the theatre, to be invited to the performance. Why don't you invite them for supper?

invitation: Nobody in the office received an invitation to the party.

arrive: to arrive in/at some place, to arrive home, to arrive at the house, to arrive in the country. They arrived in Moscow in late October.

arrival: an early arrival, on arrival, the arrival of the flight. Johnson was arrested on his arrival to New York.

ticket: a cinema ticket, a theatre ticket, a lottery ticket, a match ticket; to get tickets for the game (performance, show, concert, trip); to get a train (bus, plane) ticket.

expensive: an expensive car, expensive tastes. My cousin always wears expensive clothes. The seats in the stalls were very expensive.

fantastic: a fantastic idea. It's a fantastic performance! You've done a fantastic job.

impress: to impress sb. His answer impressed me. I was impressed by what he said.

impression: the first impression, to make an impression on sb. I know you want to make a good impression on everyone you meet.

at, in, on, to, for, of, by, from

240

9

1) A plane ticket ... London is more expensive than a train ticket. 2) When we arrived ... the hotel, we were asked to wait. 3) When Florence arrived ... the theatre, the performance had already begun. 4) Can I have a ticket ... Rome? 5) How much were the tickets ... the performance? 6) The Thompsons arrived ... Australia ... the beginning of June. 7) Have you received an invitation ... the party? 8) Our seats were not ... the stalls, they were ... the balcony. 9) The ballet made a strong impression ... the girl. 10) I was impressed ... her words. 11) Johnny rose ... his seat and went ... the window. 12) There was a storm ... applause after the performance. 13) Have you invited Paul ... dinner?

11 A. Read the paragraphs of the text and put them in the right order.

14) Do they use a lot ... scenery in "Swan Lake"?

Lisa's First Visit to the Bolshoi Theatre

- a) During the interval we walked around in the foyer. I told Alec how much I liked the ballet. It was really wonderful. I said I would love to see some other ballet some day. So we went to the box office and bought two tickets for "The Nutcracker". Then we had ice cream and coffee in the buffet.
- b) When we arrived at the theatre, we left our coats at the cloakroom. Our seats were in the stalls. I had a look at the tickets. They were not very expensive, but



we could see the stage very well. Alec bought me a programme and gave me his opera glasses. The curtains were fantastic. As we had some time before the beginning I walked to the stage and the orchestra pit and looked at the hall. Its red and golden interior [In'tiəriə] impressed me very much.

^{1 &}quot;The Nutcracker" ['nʌtˌkrækə] — «Щелкунчик» (балет на музыку П. И. Чайковского)

口()

241





- c) Last autumn my cousin invited me to the Bolshoi Theatre. I had never been there before and was really excited when Alec told me we were going to see "Swan Lake", the famous ballet by P. I. Tchaikovsky.
- d) When at last the ballet was over and the music came to an end, there was a storm of applause. I applauded loudly too. I really enjoyed myself.
- e) Soon the lights went down, then the curtain rose and the dancers appeared on the stage. I liked every minute of the first act [ækt] the scenery, the costumes, the music and the way they danced.
- B. Listen, (84), and read the text again after it.
- Use some of these word combinations and tell your friends about your or somebody else's visit to the theatre. (You can use Lisa's story as a model.)
 - to buy tickets at the box office
 - to be invited to the theatre (to invite sb to the theatre)
 - · to feel excited
 - to listen to an opera (to see a ballet, a drama, a comedy, a tragedy)
 - · to arrive at the theatre
 - · to leave the clothes at the cloakroom
 - to have seats in the stalls (gallery, circle, balcony, in a box)
 - (not) expensive tickets
 - to buy a programme
 - · to have one's opera glasses
 - · to go down/up (about the lights)
 - · to walk to the stage (orchestra pit)
 - during the interval
 - · to go to the buffet

- · to be over (about the performance)
- to rise/fall (about the curtain)
- · to applaud loudly
- to enjoy oneself

242

9

Unit

Do It on Your Own

13 Open the brackets to complete the text. Use the passive voice where necessary.

Theatre in the Time of William Shakespeare

The first real theatre (build) by a carpenter and part-time actor called James Burbage. It (call) the Theatre. Burbage's son Richard (become) the country's first well-known actor. In those days the theatre (be) very different from the theatre today. There (be) no actresses², young women's parts (perform) by the company's clowns. All the actors (have) to be musicians and dancers. Poetic drama (introduce) by Christopher Marlowe ['ma:ləu], a great dramatist who (kill) in a duel ['dju:əl] at the age of 29. The audiences also (enjoy) the plays which (write) by Thomas Kyd, Ben Johnson and John Lyly.

14 Write the same in English.

Вечернее представление, место в партере, красивые декорации, театральный бинокль, потрясающие (фантастические) костюмы, шквал аплодисментов, билет на пьесу, прибыть на вокзал, приглашение на обед, произвести хорошее впечатление на зрителей, приехать домой, билет на оперу, во время антракта.

Step Four

Do It Together

- 1 Listen to the text "The Movies Come to Hollywood", 🚳 (85), and say which of the facts were not mentioned in it.
 - 1) At first the Willcoxes bought two lemon farms near Los Angeles.
 - 2) The Willcoxes called the land they had bought Hollywood.



¹ a carpenter ['ka:pintə] — плотник

² an actress ['æktris] — актриса

- 3) Until 1910, audiences did not know the names of their favourite actors and actresses.
- 4) Good weather attracted film-makers to California.
- 5) Actors and actresses didn't talk in the first films.

Hollywood studios



Metro-Goldwyn-Mayer





Universal Pictures



Warner Bros.



Columbia Pictures Industries, Inc.



Paramount Pictures

243

244

2 Work in small groups and find out who takes the greatest interest in theatre. Ask and answer.

Find out:

- · if your friends have ever been to the theatre
- · what theatre(s) they go to or have been to
- · if they often (not very often, seldom, hardly ever, never) go to the theatre
- if they know any names of famous Russian theatres
- if they know any names of famous Russian actors and actresses
- if they can give 3—5 names of well-known Russian dramatists • if they can give 3—5 names of famous dramatists from other
- countries · what names of popular operas and ballets they know
- · what composers write and wrote music for opera and ballet · what famous opera houses around the world they know and
- where they are situated
- 3 A. Here are some facts about films and film-makers. Read the text and say which sentences can be used in the passive voice.

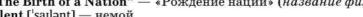
Some Facts from the History of Hollywood

People remember "The Birth of a Nation" as one of the most famous Hollywood silent² films. They first showed it in 1915 and it took nearly three hours. The film was about American history. A lot of people who had never been inside a cinema before saw this film.

The Golden Age of Cinema began with the talkies³ — when the actors in the film were able to talk. In 1927 Al Jolson, the Russian-born Hollywood actor and singer, said a few words and sang six songs in the film "The Jazz Singer". The public loved him. In 1932 they introduced a new camera ['kæm(a)rə] which could make colour films for the cinemas. Soon big audiences enjoyed colour films. One of the most popular films of all times was probably the colour film "Gone with the Wind". The audiences first saw it in 1939. The film won eight Oscars. They still show this legendary film in cinemas and on television all over the world.

Cinema uses special effects when it is too difficult or dangerous to do something in the usual way. A good example is the popular

² silent ['saɪlənt] — немой ³ a talkie ['tɔ:ki] — (разг.) звуковой фильм





¹ "The Birth of a Nation" — «Рождение нации» (название фильма)

film "Jurassic [thuə ræsik] Park" (1993). The big dinosaurs in the

Обратите внимание на различие предлогов в следующих сочетаниях:

быть сделанным из чего-то to be made of

Используется, когда материал, из которого сделан предмет, не подвергался качественной переработке, т. е. не изменил своей сущности: the

pen is made of plastic. The table is made of plastic. The bench is made of wood.

The key is made of metal. The book is made of paper. to be made from

Используется, когда материал подвергся переработке и в результате стал чем-то иным, например яблоки при варке превратились в варенье: the jam is made from apples. Обычно предлог from используется тогда, когда речь идёт о приготовлении пищи.

Butter is made from milk. Borsch is made from different vegetables.

This fruit salad is made from apples, plums and apricots.

4 A. Work with these material nouns. Listen, 🔞 (86), and repeat. 1) learn them

gold [gəuld] — золото cardboard [ˈka:dbɔ:d] — картон silver ['silvə] — серебро wool [wul] — шерсть

steel [sti:l] — сталь cotton ['kptn] — хлопок wood [wud] — дерево china ['tfainə] — фарфор

brick [brik] — кирпич

口()

¹ a screen [skri:n] — экран

2) remember them paper metal stone rubber plastic glass B. What are these things usually made of? Example: Books are usually made of paper and cardboard. 2. 3. 5. 6. 7. 450000 9. 10. 11. 8. 14. 15.

16.

246

9

Unit

12.

- 1) matryoshka dolls 9) clocks and watches 2) sweaters and warm socks 10) boxes and cartons 3) summer dresses and T-shirts 11) CDs and tapes 4) windows 12) money 13) city monuments 5) cups and plates 6) planes and cars 14) postcards 7) houses 15) rings and earrings 8) bridges 16) balls and baloons C. Say what your favourite food and drink are made from. **Focus** Модальные глаголы should, can, must и эквивалент must — have to часто употребляются с пассивным инфинитивом, при этом сказуемое строится по следующей схеме: модальный глагол + be + V₃ The letter must be written. — Письмо должно быть написано. (Письмо нужно написать.) The answer should be given. — Ответ следует дать. The record can be listened to. — Пластинку можно послушать. The books have to be returned to the library. — Книги необходимо вернуть в библиотеку. The text must be translated. — Текст должен быть переведён. 5 Complete the sentences with the given verbs, active or passive. 1) Kevin should (tell) about it as soon as possible¹. 2) This letter must (answer) at once. 3) Fred has to (tell) about the meeting. 4) This text can (translate) into Chinese. 5) Tom should (invite) to the party. 6) Children should (teach) to speak politely. 7) It's too hot. Milk must (keep) in the fridge. 8) The film can (show) after lunch. 9) This fact must (explain) to the students. 10) The text must (read) by the children. ¹ as soon as possible — как можно быстрее

247

Fo

I.

A.

action ['æk[ən] film — octpoсюжетный фильм, боевик thriller ['θrilə] — остросю-

жетный фильм, триллер science fiction ['saiəns ,fik[ən] **film** — научно-фантастиче-

ский фильм II.

speaker.

seem — казаться price — цена magic(al) ['mæʤik(l)] — магический, волшебный screen — экран agree — соглашаться

adventure [əd'vent[ə] film приключенческий фильм crime [kraim] film — детектив horror ['horə] film — фильм ужасов psychological [saikəˈlɒʤikl] **film** — психологическая дра-

besides [bi'saidz] — кроме, кроме того attention [əˈtenſn] — внимание attentive [ə'tentiv] — внимательный

B.

seem: to seem nice, to seem good, to seem all right. That apple is bad, but this one seems all right. It seems cold today. He is not what he seems. It seems to me...

ма

price: the price of sth, low/high prices, at a low price, at half price, at what price. What was the price of your new bicycle? She has become very successful but at what price? We bought the video cassette at half price. Victor bought the pens at a small price, at the price of 5 roubles each.

magic(al): a magic trick, a magic carpet, a magic show; a magical world (evening, melody). It was a truly magical night.

screen; a wide screen, a computer screen, to appear on the screen, to come to the screen. A new action film will come to the screen later this month.

agree: to agree with sb, to agree to do sth, to agree to a plan (an idea). We agreed to leave at once. Do you think John will agree with us? "Gone with the Wind" is one of the best films of the last century. — I couldn't agree more. (I quite agree with you.) disagree: to disagree with sb. I strongly disagree with the last

248

9

Step

prefers to watch science fiction films more: men or women, young people or old people? 6) Can you call the film about Robinson Crusoe an adventure film? Why? Why not? 7) What other adventure films have you seen or heard of? 8) Can you give the titles ['taitlz] of some thrillers? 9) Does it seem to you that cinema tickets are expensive nowadays? What is the usual price for evening/morning shows? 10) Do you think the size of a screen is important if you watch a film at the cinema? Which is better a usual screen or a wide screen? 11) Some people say that the world of the cinema is a magical world. Do you agree (disagree) with them? Why? 12) What Hollywood studios besides Metro-Goldwyn-Mayer do you know? 13) What influences your choice of films? Do you pay attention to the ads¹? 14) Do you think it is possible or impossible to watch all the new films of your favourite genre ['zpnrə] that come to the screen nowadays?

besides: I don't like this coat and, besides, it costs too much.

attention: to pay attention to sth/sb. You should pay attention

attentive: to be attentive to sb/sth; an attentive listener, an attentive teacher. Our family doctor is friendly and attentive. Be

7 At TV shows people are often asked different questions. How will you an-

1) What action films have you seen lately? 2) Are you fond of

horror films? Why? Why not? 3) Sherlock Holmes [[3:lpk houmz] is one of the world-famous characters of crime films. Do you know any others? 4) Are psychological dramas popular nowadays? Why do you think they are (aren't)? 5) Who do you think

8 A. Read the text and match the titles below with its four paragraphs. There

There are many rivers in England besides the Thames.

swer the questions about cinema and film making?

to what your teacher says.

attentive to your granny.

- b) How Cinema Began
- c) Where We Watch Films d) Cinema Is the Great World of Fantasy e) Tastes Differ²

is one extra title. a) Why We Go to the Cinema

¹ the ads (advertisements [əd'v3:tismənts]) — реклама ² Tastes differ. — О вкусах не спорят.



Let's Go to the Cinema!

- 1) Today it is possible to buy a video and watch a film at home, but millions of people all over the world still prefer to go to their town or city cinema for a "night out". And before television arrived in people's homes, a visit to the cinema was something really special and truly wonderful.
- 2) The Golden Age of film making and going to the cinema was between 1930 and 1950. Film stars seemed like kings and queens. Cinemas were "picture¹ palaces" where, for the price of a ticket,

¹ picture = film = movie

251 some films don't look so good on TV, they need a large screen to be really enjoyed. Television can't do it. You may agree or disagree with it, but for many people the cinema is still the only place to watch a film. Besides, the cinema is the only place where you can watch a brand-new¹ film before your friends do it and decide if you like it. 4) Of course, everyone has their own favourite kinds of films action films or thrillers, comedies, psychological dramas, science fiction, adventure and crime films, horror films or musicals. But cinema is always in the focus of our attention; it thrills, entertains and educates us. B. Listen, (88), and read the text again after it. C. Why do many people prefer watching videos to going to the cinema? Will people go to the cinema in the future? 9 Read the text "Let's Go to the Cinema" again and find in it the words and word combinations which mean: 1) an evening when you go out to a cinema, theatre or party 2) a period of time when the best work was done 3) a well-known actor or an actress in cinema pictures 4) money you pay for a ticket

3

0

口))

you could find yourself in a magical world. In that world any-

3) Nowadays cinema audiences are much smaller and usually younger than the audiences of the Golden Age. Many of the "picture palaces" are now multiscreen cinemas with four or five small cinemas inside one building. Today's films appear on video, and then on TV after cinema audiences have seen them. But

thing and everything was possible.

11) a film about imaginary² future events and characters, often about travelling to other planets

9) a film that tells a very exciting story, usually of crime or ad-

5) a place which is strange, wonderful and enjoyable

10) a funny film which ends happily

6) filmgoers

venture

7) having a few screens 8) new and not used

¹ brand-new = new and completely unused ² imaginary [ɪˈmæʤməri] — воображаемый

- 12) a film where terrible and dangerous things happen, such as dead people coming to life13) a film with spoken words, songs and often dances
- 10 Can you develop these ideas? Work in pairs or on your own.

252

t 6

Cinema some time ago

- before television arrived
- the Golden Age of Cinema
- a special event
- · big audiences
- ${f \cdot}$ film stars were like kings and queens
- · smaller cinemas
- · lower ticket prices

Cinema today

- prefer to watch video films or TVsmaller and younger audiences
- higher ticket prices
- · modern multiscreen cinemas
- brand-new films
- better picture and sound
- · a lot of special effects [I'fekts]

Cinemas and television

- look better/worse on a large screen
- · watch brand-new films
- · watch a film before you can watch it on video
- · watch a film in the comfort of your home
- · watch a film with your friends

Films of different kinds

- · tastes differ
- · films for older and younger audiences
- · favourite kinds of films
- · films that entertain us
- serious films
- · some people prefer..., other people prefer...

Do It on Your Own

11 Use of or from to complete the sentences.

heavy because it was made ... rubber.

- 1) Is your new skirt made ... wool or cotton? 2) As everybody knows, Pinocchio was made ... wood. 3) This tasty cocktail is made ... milk, ice cream and fruit juice. 4) We have made this juice ... fresh oranges. 5) A lot of old cottages in Scotland are made ... stone. 6) In Asia they often use tables and chairs made
- ... bamboo. 7) My grandmother's jam made ... plums is really nice, we often have it for tea. 8) Watches made ... gold are very expensive. 9) What is this soup made ...? 10) The boat was not
- 12 Complete the sentences with the words in brackets, active or passive.
 - 1) Your friend (should/give) some unusual present for his 20th birthday.
 - 2) Don't you know that milk (should/keep) in a fridge?
 - 3) I tried but I (couldn't/open) the window.
 - 4) Someone (have to/take) the child home. He (can't/leave) here alone.
 - 5) This new book (must/read). It's wonderful!
 - 6) They (shouldn't/spend) so much time in front of the television.

Step Five

Do It Together

- 1 Listen to the text about a famous British music band¹, (89). Say whose favou-
 - singing
 - talking
 - · eating Italian food

rite pastimes they are.

 having parties and meeting new people



口))

253

2 Paraphrase these word combinations using of or from.

Example: A glass jug. The jug is made of glass. Apple jam. The jam is made from apples.

- 1) paper money, 2) china vase, 3) fur coat, 4) vegetable salad,
- 5) metal ring, 6) tomato soup, 7) stone bench, 8) silver chain,
- 9) orange marmalade

Focus

254

9

Russian

Музыка звучит громко. Джон выглядит молодо.

чающее «хорошо».)

Алиса чувствует себя плохо.

Джейн выглядит грустной.

После некоторых глаголов английского языка: look (выглядеть), seem, appear, taste, smell (пахнуть), sound, feel, в отличие от русского языка, не

English

могут следовать наречия, после них используются прилагательные. Ср.:

The music sounds loud [laud]. John looks young.

Alice feels bad, she doesn't feel well/good. (В последнем примере well является старой формой прилагательного.)

Cp.: Alice does her homework well. В этом примере well — наречие, озна-

Обратите внимание на различия в значениях глагола to look. Jane looks sad. (После look следует прилагательное.)

Jane looked at me sadly. (После look следует наречие.)

Джейн посмотрела на меня грустно. 3 A. Complete the sentences with one of the verbs — seem, look, sound,

taste, smell or feel in the right form.

1) How are you ... today? — I'm fine, thank you. In fact I've never ... better.

2) The water ... so cold. I don't think I'll swim today.

3) The flowers ... nice. Are they from your garden?

4) The language they are speaking ... strange. I'm sure it's not a

European language. 5) Evening came. It was very quiet. The air ... of grasses and flowers.

¹ Глагол smell имеет две формы для прошедшего времени и второго причастия — smelled или smelt.

Theatres

the Bolshoi Theatre

the National Theatre

the Royal Opera House at Covent Garden

口))

the Royal Shakespeare Theatre

the Maly Theatre

the Playhouse

5 Complete the sentences. Use articles (a, the) where necessary.

Cinemas

the Rossia the Forum

256

9

the Coliseum [,kplr'si:əm]

A.

the Saturn ['sætən]

the Odeon [ˈəυdjən] the Zenith [ˈzenɪθ] заведение be based [beist] on — быть осconduct [kən'dʌkt] — диринованным на (чём-либо) жировать 257 B.

жёр

ший

conductor [kən'dʌktə] — дири-

dead [ded] — мёртвый; увяд-

inspire [in'spaiə] — вдох-

окончить высшее учебное

[ˈgræʤueɪt]

новлять

graduate

compose: to compose music, to compose an opera, to compose a ballet. Bizet ['bi:zei] composed an opera called "Carmen". composer: Mozart ['məutsa:t] was a famous composer. receive: 1) to receive a letter, to receive calls from school. We

on your birthday? 2) to receive visitors, guests¹. He received his visitors with a smile. emotion: strong emotions, an uncomfortable emotion, to control

haven't received your letter yet. Did you receive many presents

one's emotions. Love and hate are emotions. Happiness is an emotion too. full: a full glass of milk, a house full of guests for the party, to be full of sth. The hall was full of people. Her life is full of ex-

citement. The packet is half-full. A full-time student. devote: to devote sth to sb/sth. Eric devotes all his free time to playing football. John has devoted most of his time to his painting. He devoted himself to writing music. A devoted friend.

be devoted to sb/sth: We are devoted to our country. **inspire**: to inspire a poet, to inspire a painter, to inspire the audience. What inspired you to write poems? graduate: to graduate from a university, to graduate from col-

lege. My uncle graduated from Oxford in 2002. conduct: to conduct a work of music, to conduct an orchestra.

Tchaikovsky conducted the first performance of his Sixth Symphony. conductor: a famous conductor. Our music teacher is also the

conductor of our school orchestra. dead: dead flowers, dead animals, dead bodies. The plant was dead because it hadn't got enough water and sun.

be based on: The story is based on real life. The film is based on a true story.

Five

Step

¹ a guest [gest] — гость

a) an orchestra b) a composer

c) letters

d) a symphony

e) flowers

f) a university/conservatoire

g) one's parents

B. Write your own sentences with the new words.



258

9

Unit

Focus

В английском языке существуют два слова, которые соответствуют русскому слову «концерт»:

a concert ['kpnsət] — публичное исполнение музыкальных произведений и других номеров по определённой программе; a concerto [kənˈtʃɜːtəʊ] — крупное музыкальное произведение для соль-

ного инструмента в сопровождении оркестра. We went to a concert of Vivaldi's music.

Tchaikovsky's First Piano Concerto is one of the best-loved melodies of all times.

- 8 A. Read the text and say which of these facts were not mentioned in it.
 - 1) What people thought of Tchaikovsky's music in his time and what they think of it today.
 - 2) How Tchaikovsky started composing music.
 - 3) Tchaikovsky's career in music.
 - 4) Tchaikovsky's student years.
 - 5) The ballets he composed.
 - 6) The operas he composed.
 - 7) What countries the composer visited in Europe.

8) The composer's last music piece.





P. I. Tchaikovsky and His Music

Peter Ilyich Tchaikovsky (1840—1893) is one of the most important figures in the history of music. He wrote some of the best-loved melodies of all times. His ballet music is some of the happiest and most tuneful¹ music ever written.

By the end of his life, in the late 19th century Tchaikovsky was known as the greatest living composer. However, at the beginning of his career, his compositions were not always well received. Tchaikovsky's music, which is so popular today, was at the time considered to be very modern and different. Some people thought it was too sentimental and emotional. But audiences everywhere came to love Tchaikovsky's musical style which was full of feeling and could excite them.

Tchaikovsky was born in Votkinsk, Russia, in 1840. Young Peter showed an early interest in music. He was given piano lessons at the age of five and very soon he learned to play better than his teacher. His mother died when he was fourteen, he felt unhappy and began to compose music which helped him. At the age of twenty-three he became a full-time student at St Petersburg Conservatory [kənˈsɜːvətri]. He graduated from it and was offered a post at the Moscow Conservatory, where he taught for the next twelve years. Then he devoted himself to composing.

His music was often inspired by Russian folk² tunes and includes some of the world's best-loved melodies such as the "Romeo

¹ tuneful ['tju:nfl] — мелодичный

² folk [fəuk] — фольклорный, народный

['rəumiəu] and Juliet Fantasy Overture ['əuvətjuə]" and his First Piano Concerto [kənˈtʃɜːtəu]. His ballets — "Swan Lake", "Sleeping Beauty" and "The Nutcracker" — are still among the most popular ballets.

Between 1888 and 1893 Tchaikovsky visited Europe and the USA conducting his own works. In 1893 he conducted the first performance of his Sixth Symphony ['simfəni]. He called it the "Pathetique" (full of feeling), saying, "It is based on so much emotion and feeling that when I composed this work, I found myself crying." Tchaikovsky considered this to be his greatest composition: it was also his last. Less than two weeks later he was dead.

口()

B. Listen, (91), and read the text again after it.

- 9 A. Read the text about Tchaikovsky again and find in it sentences that prove1 the following.
 - 1) Tchaikovsky's music is not forgotten. 2) The beginning of Tchaikovsky's career in music was not successful. 3) Tchaikovsky's music is full of emotion. 4) Peter Tchaikovsky was a child prodigy. 5) Young Tchaikovsky left his home to study music. 6) Many years of Tchaikovsky's life are connected with Moscow. 7) Tchaikovsky composed three ballets. 8) Tchaikovsky spent some time abroad. 9) The Sixth Symphony was Tchaikovsky's swan song2.

B. Where can you hear Tchaikovsky's music? Why do you think it is not forgotten?



Social English

10 A. Learn to express your opinion³ in English.

I believe...

I think...

In my opinion...

In my view [vju:]... по-моему, As I see it...

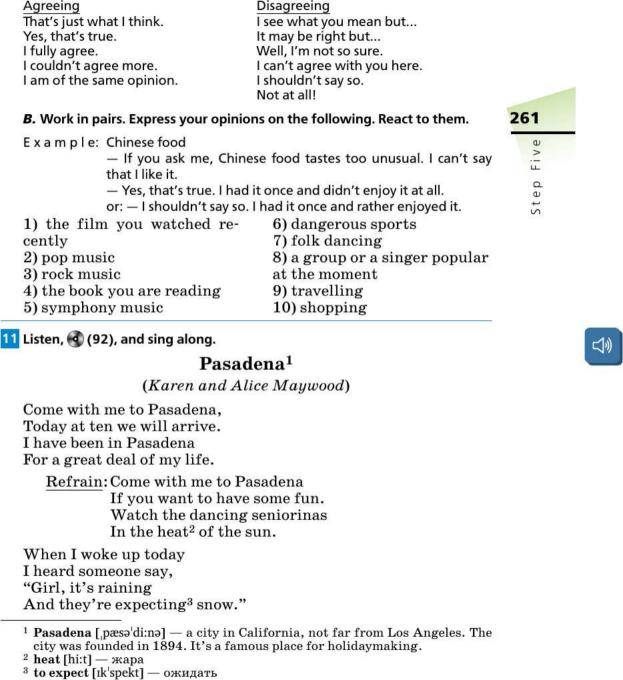
To my mind [maind]... If you ask me...

мне кажется

¹ to prove [pru:v] — доказывать

² swan song ['swpn spn] = the last performance, speech or piece of work in the career of a well-known person

³ opinion [ə'pınjən] — мнение



| Refrain | | |
|--|----------------------------------|--|
| And it's morning I knew | | |
| What I had to do — | | |
| Take the next plane | | |
| And finally go. | | |
| Refrain | | |
| WI 1 D W MI 1 1 0 | | |
| What Do You Think? 12 Which of these proverbs are true | ? Explain why. | |
| and the second s | for ever. es Jack a dull boy. | |

Do It on Your Own

262

- 13 Use prepositions where necessary.
 - den was full ... beautiful flowers pansies, daisies, poppies and bluebells. 3) The libretto ... the opera was based ... an old Italian legend. 4) John devoted himself ... writing songs. 5) We went ... a concert of Prokofiev's music. 6) Our flat is not very large and we receive ... guests ... the living room. 7) Jane graduated ... college three years ago. 8) The famous ballet "The Nutcracker" ... Tchaikovsky is based ... the fairy tale of the same name ... Hof-

mann. 9) Hard rock is the kind of music not ... everybody's taste. 10) Mr Morrison was a man ... honour and always kept his word.

1) Young Albert has always been devoted ... music. 2) The gar-

- 14 Write English equivalents for these.
 - А. Пахнуть сладко, чувствовать себя хорошо, чувствовать себя плохо, выглядеть молодо, звучать приятно, разговаривать холодно, смотреть сердито, звучать громко, разговаривать громко, быть на вкус сладким.
- В. Принимать гостей, сочинять музыку, музыка, наполненная чувством, заканчивать консерваторию, известный дирижёр, преданный друг, быть основанным на сказке, мёртвая

птица, посвятить симфонию родителям, сочинить балет, посвятить свою жизнь пению, вдохновлять аудиторию, дирижировать оркестром, настоящее вдохновение.

Check Your Progress

15 Write TEST 6 (Workbook 2, pp. 124—128) and check your results.

| Tasks | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | | 6 | 7 | 8 | Total |
|----------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|-------|
| -0.40 | | | | | а | b | | | | |
| Maximum result | 5 | 5 | 4 | 8 | 7 | 7 | 3 | 10 | 12 | 61 |
| Your result | | | | | | | | | | |

Dear All,

We hope you have enjoyed your English. See you again next school year. Enjoy your summer holidays! The authors

Вопросы для самооценки

- Какие из разделов учебника оказались самыми сложными? Как вы думаете, почему?
- 2. В каких грамматических явлениях вы допустили ошибки?
- Какая лексика требует дальнейшей отработки?
 Что могло бы вам помочь лучше справиться с заданиями по говорению? Письму?
- 5. Приходилось ли вам при выполнении заданий обращаться за дополнительной помощью к своему учителю? Родителям?
- 6. Использовали ли вы при выполнении заданий дополнительные ресурсы: справочники, Интернет?

7. Насколько вы довольны своими результатами?

263

Step Five

Англо-русский словарь¹

A

264

ache [еіk] боль

a **backache** ['bækeɪk] боль в спине an **earache** ['ɪəreɪk] боль в ухе

a headache [ˈhedeɪk] головная боль a stomachache [ˈstʌməkeɪk] боль в животе

a stomachache [staniskelk] ооль в животе act [ækt] 1) действовать, поступать; 2) исполнять (pоль), играть

to act in a performance играть в спектакле actor [ˈæktə] актёр

actress [ˈæktrɪs] актриса acrobat*² [ˈækrəbæt] акробат

adjective* [ˈæʤiktɪv] имя прилагательное

advantage [əd'va:ntiф] преимущество advertisement [əd'va:tismənt] реклама

agree [əˈgri:] соглашаться to agree to sth/with sb соглашаться с чем-л./кем-л.

air [eə] воздух in the open air на открытом воздухе alcohol [ˈælkəhɒl] алкоголь

alive [əˈlaɪv] живой

all [э:l] все, весь, всё, вся at all совсем, вовсе

alligator [ˈælɪgeɪtə] аллигатор along* [əˈlɒŋ] вдоль, по alphabet [ˈælfəbet] алфавит alphabetically [ˌælfəˈbetɪkli] в алфавитном порядке

already [ɔ:lˈredi] ужé also [ˈɔ:lsəu] тоже, также altogether* [ˌɔ:ltəˈgeðə] в целом among [əˈmʌŋ] среди

among [э mлŋ] среди ancient ['eɪn∫(э)nt] древний another [ə'nлðə] другой anteater ['ænt,i:tə] муравьед

appear [əˈріə] появляться applaud [əˈplɔ:d] аплодировать applause [əˈplɔ:z] аплодисменты

² Звёздочкой обозначены слова, которые встречаются в учебнике 1—2 раза и не предназначены для заучивания.

¹ Транскрипция в словаре, как и везде в учебнике, даётся по Macmillan English Dictionary for Advanced Learners, 2002.

| a storm of applause шквал (буря) аплодисментов | |
|---|-----|
| arena [əˈri:nə] арена | |
| arrival [əˈraɪvl] прибытие | |
| arrive [əˈraɪv] прибывать | |
| to arrive at/in прибывать в | |
| associate [əˌsəʊsieɪt] ассоциировать | |
| association [əˌsəʊsiˈeɪʃn] ассоциация | |
| athlete [ˈæθliːt] спортсмен, атлет | 265 |
| athletic [æθˈletɪk] атлетический | 203 |
| athletics [æθˈletɪks] атлетика | |
| attention [əˈten∫n] внимание | |
| to pay attention обращать внимание | |
| attentive [əˈtentɪv] внимательный | |
| to be attentive to sb/sth быть внимательным к кому-л./чему-л. | |
| audience [ˈɔːdiəns] аудитория | |
| autumn [ˈɔ:təm] осень | |
| | |
| В | |
| | |
| badge [bæʤ] значок | |
| badminton [ˈbædmɪntən] бадминтон | |
| bake* [beɪk] выпекать | |
| balcony ['bælkəni] балкон | |
| ballet [ˈbæleɪ] балет | |
| band [bænd] музыкальная группа, оркестр | |
| banjo* [ˈbænʤəʊ] банджо | |
| barefoot*['beəfut] босой, босоногий | |
| to walk barefoot ходить босиком | |
| baseball [ˈbeɪsbɔ:l] бейсбол | |
| based (on) [beist] основанный (на) | |
| battle [ˈbætl] битва | |
| bathe* [beið] купаться | |
| beech [bi:tʃ] бук | |
| behaviour [bɪˈheɪvjə] поведение | |
| belong [bɪˈlɒŋ] принадлежать | |
| to belong to sb/sth принадлежать кому-л./чему-л. | |
| besides [bɪˈsaɪdz] кроме, кроме того | |
| between [bɪˈtwiːn] между (двумя объектами) | |
| bicycle [ˈbaɪsɪkl] велосипед | |
| bilingual [baɪˈlɪŋgwəl] двуязычный | |
| biscuit [ˈbɪskɪt] печенье | |
| blackbird [ˈblækbɜːd] дрозд | |
| bluebell* [ˈblu:bel] колокольчик | |
| L L | |

| | " |
|--|---|
| The state of the s | boxing [ˈbɒksɪŋ] бокс |
| | brand-new [ˌbrænd ˈnjuː] новый, с иголочки |
| 266 | breathe [bri:ð] дышать |
| | brick [brik] кирпич |
| | bring [brin] приносить |
| | to bring back вернуть |
| | budget ['bʌʤɪt] 1) <i>n</i> бюджет; 2) <i>v</i> распределять время |
| | buffalo ['bʌfələu] буйвол, бизон |
| | buffet [ˈbufeɪ] буфет |
| | build [bild] строить |
| | building [ˈbɪldɪŋ] здание, строение |
| | butterfly [ˈbʌtəflaɪ] бабочка |
| | by [baɪ] у, около, рядом, возле, при |
| | by and by постепенно, мало-помалу |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | café [ˈkæfeɪ] кафе |
| | call [kɔ:l] звонить, звать |
| | can* [kæn] консервная банка |
| | canary [kəˈneəri] канарейка |
| | candidate [ˈkændɪdət] кандидат |
| | $\operatorname{candy}\left(AmE\right)$ [ˈkændi] конфета |
| | car park (BrE) [ˈka: ˌpa:k] стоянка для машин |
| | carbon dioxide* [ˌka:bən daɪˈɒksaɪd] углекислый газ |
| | cardboard [ˈkaːdbɔːd] картон |
| | carnation [ka:ˈneɪʃn] гвоздика |
| | |

bookworm* ['bokw3:m] книжный червь (*перен*.) border ['bɔ:də] 1) *п* граница; 2) *v* граничить to border on sth граничить с чем-л.

a box office ['boks pfis] театральная касса

bow* [bau] поклон box [bbks] ложа

| chin* [tʃɪn] подбородок | |
|--|-----|
| china [ˈʧаɪnə] фарфор | |
| chips (AmE) [tJips] хрустящий картофель | |
| chorus* [ˈkɔ:rəs] xop | |
| chrysanthemum [krɪˈsænθɪməm] хризантема | |
| сіпета [ˈsɪnəmə] кино, кинотеатр | |
| circle [ˈsɜːkl] ярус | |
| circus [ˈsɜːkəs] цирк | 267 |
| to go to the circus пойти в цирк | - |
| to take sb to the circus сводить кого-л. в цирк | |
| civilization [ˌsɪvəlarˈzeɪʃn] цивилизация | |
| climate [ˈklaɪmɪt] климат | |
| climb [klaɪm] взбираться, лезть наверх | |
| cloakroom [ˈkləʊkrʊm] гардероб (в театре) | |
| clown* [klaun] клоун | |
| coast [kəust] побережье | |
| collect [kəˈlekt] собирать | |
| collection [kəˈlekʃn] коллекция | |
| colloquial* [kəˈləʊkwiəl] разговорный | |
| column [ˈkɒləm] колонна | |
| comedy [ˈkɒmədi] комедия | |
| committee [kəˈmɪti] комитет | |
| common [ˈkɒmən] обычный, часто встречающийся | |
| compete [kəmˈpi:t] соревноваться | |
| competition [ˌkɒmpəˈtɪʃn] соревнование | |
| complication [ˌkɒmplɪˈkeɪʃn] осложнение | |
| to develop complications получить осложнения | |
| compose [kəmˈpəʊz] сочинять | |
| composer [kəmˈpəʊzə] композитор | |
| composition [ˌkɒmpəˈzɪʃn] сочинение | |
| concert [ˈkɒnsət] концерт | |
| concerto [kənˈtʃɜːtəʊ] концерт (<i>музыкальное произведение</i>) | |
| conduct [kənˈdʌkt] дирижировать | |
| to conduct an orchestra дирижировать оркестром | |
| conductor [kənˈdʌktə] дирижёр | |
| conference [ˈkɒnf(ə)rəns] конференция | |
| connect [kəˈnekt] соединять | |
| to connect sb/sth to sb/sth соединить кого-л./что-л. с кем-л./чем-л. | |
| conservatory [kənˈsɜːvətri] консерватория | |
| consider [kənˈsɪdə] полагать | |
| to consider doing sth обдумывать какое-л. действие | |
| to be considered to be считаться кем-л. | |
| continent [ˈkɒntɪnənt] континент | |
| cooker [ˈkʊkə] плита | |

cornflower ['kɔ:nflauə] василёк
costume ['kɒstju:m] костюм (meamp.)
cotton ['kɒtn] хлопок
cough [kɒf] 1) n кашель; 2) v кашлять
to have a bad cough сильно кашлять
countryside ['kʌntrɪsaid] деревня, сельская местность
coyote* ['kɔɪəut] койот
crocodile ['krɒkədail] крокодил
crow [krəu] ворона

cookie (AmE) ['kuki] печенье (домашнее)

crocodile [ˈkrɒkədaɪl] крокодил
crow [krəʊ] ворона
cultivate [ˈkʌltɪveɪt] выращивать, культивировать
culture [ˈkʌltʃə] культура

cure [kjuə] вылечить to cure of sth вылечить от чего-л. curtain ['ks:tn] занавес cut [kлt] резать to cut down рубить, срубать cycle ['saikl] кататься на велосипеде cycling ['saikln] езда на велосипеде

D

daisy ['deizi] маргаритка, ромашка damage ['dæmiʤ] повреждать, наносить ущерб dandelion ['dændilaiən] одуванчик danger ['deinʤə] опасность dangerous ['deinʤərəs] опасный dead [ded] мёртвый deep [di:p] глубокий

daffodil ['dæfədil] нарцисс

deeply ['di:pli] глубоко

desert ['dezət] пустыня

diet ['daɪət] диета

desperate ['desp(ə)rət] серьёзный, отчаянный, радикальный destroy [dɪ'strɔɪ] разрушать develop [dɪ'veləp] развивать(ся) to develop into sb/sth превратиться в кого-л./что-л. devote (to) [dɪ'vəut] посвятить

to devote oneself to посвятить себя devoted [di'vəutid] преданный diabetes* [daɪəˈbiːtiːz] сахарная болезні

derivative* [dr'rivətiv] производное слово

diabetes* [ˌdaɪə'bi:ti:z] сахарная болезнь, диабет dictionary ['dɪkʃən(ə)ri] словарь a dictionary entry словарная статья

| атріе * [атрі] ямочка | |
|---|-------------|
| dinosaur [ˈdaɪnəsɔ:] динозавр | |
| disagree [ˌdɪsəˈgriː] не соглашаться | |
| disappear [ˌdɪsəˈрɪə] исчезнуть | |
| disc [disk] диск | |
| disco [ˈdɪskəʊ] дискотека | |
| discover [dɪsˈkʌvə] сделать открытие, открыть | |
| discovery [dɪsˈkʌv(ə)ri] открытие | 269 |
| dodo* [ˈdəudəu] дронт | 4- <u>V</u> |
| dolphin* [ˈdɒlfɪn] дельфин | |
| domestic* [dəˈmestɪk] домашний | |
| domesticate* [dəˈmestɪkeɪt] приручать (о животных) | |
| dragonfly [ˈdrægənˌflaɪ] стрекоза | |
| drama [ˈdraːmə] драма | |
| dramatist ['dræmətist] драматург | |
| drug [drʌg] наркотик | |
| drugstore (AmE) ['drʌgstɔ:] аптека | |
| duel* [ˈdju:əl] дуэль | |
| dump [dлmp] свалка | |
| dustbin [ˈdʌstbɪn] мусорный бак | |
| 50.000-000-000-00 | |
| TA | |
| E | |
| 1 5. (1 | |
| each [i:ʧ] каждый | |
| earth [3:0] земля | |
| easy[ˈiːzi] лёгкий | |
| easily [ˈiːzɪli] легко | |
| ecologist [i:ˈkɒləʤɪst] эколог | |
| ecology [iːˈkɒləʤi] экология | |
| edelweiss [ˈeɪdlvaɪs] эдельвейс | |
| electricity [ɪˌlekˈtrɪsəti] электричество | |
| elephant [ˈelɪfənt] слон | |
| $\mathbf{elevator}\left(AmE ight)$ ['eliveitə] лифт | |
| elm [elm] вяз | |
| emblem [ˈembləm] эмблема | |
| emotion [ɪˈməʊʃn] эмоция, чувство | |
| emotional [ɪˈməʊʃn(ə)l] эмоциональный | |
| endangered [ɪnˈdeɪnʤəd] исчезающий, вымирающий | |
| energy [ˈenəʤi] энергия | |
| enough [ɪˈnʌf] достаточно | |
| entertainment [ˌentəˈteɪnmənt] развлечение | |
| environment [ɪnˈvaɪərənmənt] окружающая среда | |
| event [ɪˈvent] событие | |

ever ['evə] когда-нибудь evergreen(s) ['evəgri:n] вечнозелёные растения examine [ід'zæmin] осматривать (внимательно) example [ig'za:mpl] пример for example например except* [ik'sept] кроме excite [ik'sait] возбуждать, волновать excited [ik'saitid] взволнованный

270

exciting [ik'saitin] волнующий exercise ['eksəsaiz] упражнение (исчисл.), физическая активность (неисexpand* [ik'spænd] распространять, расширять

expect* [ik'spekt] ожидать expedition [ˌekspəˈdɪʃn] экспедиция expensive [ik'spensiv] дорогой experience [ik'spiəriəns] опыт explain [ik'splein] объяснять

extinct [ik'stinkt] исчезнувший, вымерший

in fact в сущности, фактически

fact [fækt] факт

factory [ˈfæktri] фабрика

fall (AmE) [fo:l] осеньfall [fɔ:l] падать to fall in love влюбиться fantastic [fæn tæstik] фантастический, потрясающий fast [fa:st] 1) adj быстрый; 2) adv быстро faucet (AmE) ['fɔ:sɪt] водопроводный кран fauna ['fɔ:nə] фауна, животный мир feather* [ˈfeðə] перо

field [fi:ld] поле figure [ˈfi:gə] 1) цифра; 2) фигура figure skating ['fi:gə ˌskeɪtɪŋ] фигурное катание film [film] 1) кинофильм; 2) киноплёнка an action film боевик

an adventure film приключенческий фильм a crime film детектив a horror film фильм ужасов

a psychological film психологическая драма a science fiction film научно-фантастический фильм

fir (tree) [fз:] ель flamingo [flə mıngəu] фламинго

on the following day на следующий день foot [fot] 1) ступня; 2) фут (единица измерения длины = 12 дюймов = $= 0.3048 \,\mathrm{m}$

to flow east (north, etc.) течь на восток (север и т. д.)

forget [fəˈget] забывать forget-me-not [fəˈget mɪ ˌnɒt] незабудка found [faund] основывать

flora [ˈflɔ:rə] флора, растительный мир

to follow sth следовать чему-л.

to flow into the ocean впадать в океан

flow [fləu] течь

folk [fəʊk] народный

follow [ˈfɒləʊ] следовать (за)

following [ˈfɒləʊɪŋ] следующий

foyer [ˈfɔɪeɪ] фойе French fries [frent['fraiz] жареный картофель fried* [fraid] жареный fresh [fre(] свежий to look fresh выглядеть свежим, отдохнувшим fresh water пресная вода full [ful] полный to be full of быть наполненным

full-time student студент-очник **future** [ˈfjuːtʃə] 1) *n* будущее; 2) *adj* будущий in the near future в ближайшем будущем

G gallery [ˈgæləri] галёрка

gallon* [ˈgælən] галло́н (единица измерения объёма = 8 пинт = 4,546 л) game [geim] игра garbage [ˈga:bɪʤ] мусор a garbage can AmE [ˈgaːbɪʤ kæn] мусорный ящик

geology [ʤɪˈɒləʤi] геология giraffe [ʤɪˈra:f] жираф gladiator [ˈglædieɪtə] гладиатор globe* [gləub] 1) глобус; 2) земной шар

gas(oline) (AmE) [ˈgæsəli:n] бензин

go down (up) гаснуть; загораться (об огнях, свете) God [gpd] Bor gold [gəʊld] 1) *п* золото; 2) *adj* золотой golf [gplf] гольф good [gud] хороший

to be good at sth уметь что-то хорошо делать

government ['gʌvnmənt] правительство
graduate ['græфueɪt] окончить высшее учебное заведение
to graduate from university окончить университет

to graduate from university окончить университет grammar ['græmə] грамматика

grizzly bear [ˌgrɪzli: ˈbeə] медведь гризли grow [grəʊ] выращивать, расти (о растениях)

to grow up расти (о животных и людях) to grow into sb превращаться в кого-л.

growth [grəυθ] рост guest [gest] гость gull [gʌl] чайка

habit [ˈhæbɪt] привычка

habitat ['hæbitæt] место обитания

H

272

half-full ['ha:f ,fol] наполовину заполненный handy* [ˈhændi] ловкий, умелый, рукастый hard[ha:d]1) adi тяжёлый, трудный; 2) adv усердно, упорно hardly [ˈhaːdli] едва hare [heə] заяц harm [ha:m] вред **head** [hed] 1) n голова; 2) v возглавлять health [helθ] здоровье healthy [ˈhelθi] здоровый heat* [hi:t] жара hedgehog [ˈheʤhɒg] ёж herself [hз:'self] сама себя himself [hɪmˈself] сам себя historian [hɪˈstɔ:riən] историк historic [hɪˈstɒrɪk] исторический hitch [hit]] привязывать, прицеплять hole* [həul] Hopa homework ['həumws:k] домашнее задание honour ['pnə] честь horn* [ho:n] por hunt [hant] охотиться hurt [hз:t] причинять боль It hurts to walk. Больно ходить.

1

ice [aɪs] лёд ice hockey [ˈaɪs ˌhɒki] хоккей на льду impression [ɪmˈpreʃn] впечатление to make an impression on sb производить впечатление на кого-л. improvise* [ˈɪmprəvaɪz] импровизировать inch*[int] дюйм (единица измерения длины = 2,54 см) include [ɪnˈkluːd] включать including [ɪnˈklu:dɪŋ] включая industrial [mˈdʌstriəl] индустриальный, промышленный influence [ˈɪnfluəns] влияние insect ['insekt] насекомое inspire [ɪnˈspaɪə] вдохновлять inspired [ɪnˈspaɪəd] вдохновлённый instruct* [in'strakt] инструктировать, учить interior* [ɪnˈtɪəriə] интерьер international [ˌɪntəˈnæʃn(ə)l] международный interview [ˈɪntəvju:] интервью introduce [ˌɪntrəˈdju:s] представлять to introduce sb to sb представлять кого-л. кому-л. Let me introduce myself. Разрешите представиться. invite [ɪnˈvaɪt] приглашать to invite to some place приглашать куда-л. to invite for dinner приглашать к обеду invitation [ɪnvɪˈteɪ(n] приглашение

imaginary [ɪˈmæʤɪnəri] воображаемый immigrant [ˈɪmɪgrənt] иммигрант impossible [ɪmˈpɒsəbl] невозможный impress [ɪmˈpres] производить впечатление

jazz [ʤæz] джаз jog [ʤɒg] 1) n бег трусцой; 2) v бегать трусцой join [ʤɔm] присоединяться judo ['ʤu:dəʊ] дзюдо junk food ['ʤʌŋk ˌfu:d] неполноценная пища just [ʤʌst] только что

keep [ki:p] держать kilometre [ˈkɪləˌmi:tə] километр

K

island [ˈaɪlənd] остров

item* ['aɪtəm] пункт

isolation [ˌaɪsəˈleɪ(n] изоляция

| | kind [kaind] вид, род, разновидность |
|-----|--|
| | kind of strange несколько странный |
| | kind of pretty довольно хорошенький |
| | kitten [ˈkɪtn] котёнок |
| | koala bear [kəʊˌa:lə ˈbeə] коала |
| | L |
| | |
| 274 | land [lænd] земля, суша |
| | a piece of land клочок суши, участок |
| | language [ˈlæŋgwɪʤ] язык |
| | a parent language праязык |
| | large [la:ф] большой |
| | last [la:st] последний |
| | at last наконец |
| | law* [lɔ:] закон |
| | to make laws создавать (писать) законы |
| | lazily [ˈleɪzɪli] лениво |
| | leek [li:k] лук-порей |
| | length [lenθ] длина |
| | librarian* [laɪˈbreəriən] библиотекарь |
| | library [ˈlaɪbrəri] библиотека |
| | lie [laɪ] лежать |
| | to lie on the river быть расположенным на реке |
| | lift [lift] лифт |
| | likes [laɪks] то, что нравится |
| | likes and dislikes любимые и нелюбимые (занятия, вещи) |

lilac [ˈlaɪlək] сирень

look [luk] смотреть

lorry [ˈlɒri] грузовик lose [lu:z] терять loud [laud] громкий loudly [ˈlaudli] громко

love [lnv] 1) n любовь; 2) v любить

to fall in love влюбиться love of sth любовь к чему-л.

liquid* [ˈlɪkwɪd] жидкость lizard* [ˈlɪzəd] ящерица local [ˈləʊkl] местный long [lɒŋ] длинный

lion [ˈlaɪən] лев

lily of the valley [ˌlɪli əv ðə ˈvæli] ландыш

a long jump ['lon damp] прыжок в длину

to be in love любить, быть влюблённым

to look the word up смотреть слово в словаре

```
mad*[mæd] сумасшедший
magic(al) [ˈmæʤɪk(l)] волшебный
maple [ˈmeɪpl] клён
maybe [ˈmeɪbi] может быть
meadow* [ˈmedəʊ] луг
meal [mi:l] трапеза
measure ['meʒə] 1) n измерение; 2) v мерить
medical [ˈmedɪkl] медицинский
medicine [ˈmedsən] 1) медицина; 2) лекарство
member [ˈmembə] член
mention* [ˈmenʃən] упоминать
mentioned* [ˈmenʃnd] упомянутый
metre [ˈmi:tə] метр
microscope [ˈmaɪkrəˌskəup] микроскоп
mighty ['maɪti] могущественный, могучий
mile* [maɪl] миля (единица измерения длины)
mind [maind] ym, pasym
monkey [ˈmʌŋki] обезьяна
monolingual [ˌmɒnəʊˈlɪŋgwəl] одноязычный
moon [mu:n] луна
moor* [muə] вересковая пустошь
moral* [ˈmɒrəl] мораль
mostly ['məustli] в основном
move [mu:v] двигаться
movie (AmE) [ˈmuːvi] кино
multilingual [ˌmʌltɪˈlɪŋgwəl] многоязычный
music [ˈmju:zɪk] музыка
   a music band ['mju:zɪk ˌbænd] музыкальная группа
musician [mju:ˈzɪ(n] музыкант
myself [maɪˈself] я сам
N
nationality [ˌnæʃəˈnæləti] национальность
```

275

natural [ˈnæʧ(ə)rəl] естественный, натуральный, природный nature [ˈneɪʧə] природа
necessary [ˈnesɪs(ə)ri] необходимый
need [ni:d] нуждаться
nightingale [ˈnaɪtɪŋgeɪl] соловей
noble [ˈnəʊbl] благородный
noun* [naʊn] имя существительное

nowadays ['nauədeiz] в наше время
number ['nлmbə] номер
nutcracker* ['nлtˌkrækə] 1) обыкн. pl щипцы для орехов; 2) (the Nutcracker)
«Щелкунчик»

276 o

oak [əuk] дуб official [əˈfɪʃl] официальный only [ˈəunli] только an only child единственн

an only child единственный ребёнок opera ['pp(ə)rə] опера opera glasses театральный бинокль

opera glasses театральный бинокль opinion [əˈpɪnjən] мнение opossum [əˈpɒsəm] опо́ссум opponent [əˈpəʊnənt] оппонент

opponent [э'рэопэпт] оппонент
orchestra ['ɔ:kɪstrə] оркестр
orchestra pit* ['ɔ:kɪstrə ˌpɪt] оркестровая яма
organize ['ɔ:gənaɪz] организовывать
ostrich ['ɒstrɪtʃ] страус

other ['ʌðə] другие
in other words другими словами
others ['ʌðəz] другие
ounce [aons] унция (единица измерения веса = 28,35 г)
ourselves [aoəˈselvz] мы сами, себя
over [ˈəovə] сверх

overture* [ˈəʊvətjʊə] увертюра owl [aul] сова oxygen* [ˈɒksɪʤ(ə)n] кислород

overcome* [,əuvə 'kлm] преодолеть

I

pain [pem] боль to be in pain испытывать боль painful ['pemfl] болезненный palm [pa:m] пальма panda ['pændə] панда

panda [рæнdэ] панда
pansy ['рænzi] анютины глазки (цветок)
parachute ['рæгә∫u:t] парашют
perfect ['рз:fikt] совершенный
polar bear [ˌрәυlə ˈbeə] полярный медведь

politician [ppləˈtɪʃn] политик

whenever possible когда возможно wherever possible где возможно

pollute [pəˈluːt] загрязнять

рорру ['рррі] мак

price [prais] цена

pollution [pəˈlu:ʃn] загрязнение

popular [ˈpɒpjʊlə] популярный

population [ˌpɒpjʊˈleɪʃn] население possible [ˈpɒsəbl] возможный

power ['раџә] сила, власть, мощь

prescribe [рп'skraib] прописывать to prescribe sb a medicine for sth прописывать кому-л. лекарство от чего-л.
prescription [pп'skrip[ən] рецепт

polluter [pəˈluːtə] источник загрязнений (окружающей среды)

pound* [paond] фунт (единица измерения веса = 0.453 кг)

to be popular with sb пользоваться популярностью среди кого-л.

to write out a prescription for sth выписать рецепт от чего-л. president ['prezidənt] президент previous* ['pri:viəs] предыдущий

probable [ˈprɒbəbl] вероятный probably [ˈprɒbəbli] вероятно programme [ˈprəʊgræm] программа pronounce* [prəˈnaʊns] произносить

protect [prəˈtekt] защищать

rabbit [ˈræbɪt] кролик

protected [prəˈtektɪd] защищённый
proud [praud] гордый
 to be proud of sb/sth гордиться кем-л./чем-л.
prove [pru:v] доказывать

pronunciation* [prəˌnʌnsiˈeɪʃn] произношение

puffin* ['pлfm] ту́пик (название птицы) pumpkin vine* ['pлmpkm vam] тыквенный стебель

R

race [reɪs] забег, заезд railroad* [ˈreɪlrəʊd] железная дорога reaction* [riˈæk(n] реакция 277

to receive guests принимать гостей recite [п'sait] декламировать, читать наизусть recording* [п'kɔ:dɪŋ] запись recycle [ri: saikl] перерабатывать regular [ˈregjulə] регулярный 278 regularly ['regjulali] регулярно relation [riˈleɪʃn] 1) родственник; 2) отношение relax [riˈlæks] расслабляться religious [rəˈlɪʤəs] религиозный remedy ['remədi] лечение, лечебное средство remember [п'membə] помнить to remember to do sth не забыть что-л. сделать residence ['rezid(ə)ns] резиденция responsible [rɪˈspɒnsəbl] ответственный (the) rich [ritf] 1) n богатые ($\pi \omega \partial u$); 2) adj богатый rise [raiz] подниматься, вставать to rise up подниматься to rise from the table вставать из-за стола root [ru:t] корень row [rəu] ряд rows of seats ряды кресел rubbish ['rabi(] mycop rugby ['rʌgbi] регби safe* [seif] безопасный same [seim] тот же самый, такой же

reap [ri:p] жать (серпом)

receive [rɪˈsi:v] получать

reappear [ri:əˈрiə] появиться вновь

at the same time в то же самое время save [seiv] спасать scenery ['si:nəri] (pl) декорации science ['saiəns] наука science and technology наука и техника a science teacher учитель естественных наук a field of science область науки

What's the score? Какой счёт?

scientific [ˌsaɪənˈtɪfɪk] научный scientist [ˈsaɪəntɪst] учёный score [skɔː] счёт to score a goal забить гол

| screen [skri:n] экран | |
|--|-----|
| seagull [ˈsiːgʌl] чайка | |
| seek* [si:k] искать | |
| seem [si:m] казаться | |
| It seems to me. Мне кажется. | |
| shamrock [ˈʃæmrɒk] белый клевер, трилистник | |
| share* [ʃeə] делиться | |
| shave* [∫eɪv] бриться | 279 |
| sidewalk (AmE) [ˈsaɪdwɔ:k] тротуар | 8 |
| silent [ˈsaɪlənt] немой (о фильме) | |
| silver [ˈsɪlvə] 1) n серебро; 2) adj серебряный | |
| since [sɪns] с тех пор как | |
| size [saɪz] размер | |
| skyscraper [ˈskaɪˌskreɪpə] небоскрёб | |
| slow [sləu] медленный | |
| slowly [ˈsləʊli] медленно | |
| \mathbf{smell} [smel] 1) n запах; 2) v пахнуть; нюхать | |
| smoke [sməuk] дым | |
| snake [sneɪk] змея | |
| sneeze [sni:z] чихать | |
| snowdrop [ˈsnəudrɒp] подснежник | |
| soil [sɔɪl] 1) <i>n</i> земля; 2) <i>v</i> пачкать | |
| solve* [splv] разрешать (проблемы) | |
| sound [saund] 1) n звук; 2) v звучать | |
| to sound good звучать привлекательно | |
| sow [səu] сеять | |
| species [ˈspi:ʃi:z] вид(ы) | |
| speech [spi:tʃ] речь | |
| to make a speech произнести речь | |
| speechless [ˈspiːtʃləs] онемевший | |
| squirrel [ˈskwɪrəl] белка | |
| stadium [ˈsteɪdiəm] стадион | |
| stage [steiф] сцена | |
| stalls [stɔ:lz] партер | |
| station [ˈsteɪʃn] станция | |
| steel [sti:l] 1) <i>n</i> сталь; 2) <i>adj</i> стальной | |
| still [stɪl] всё ещё | |
| stone [stəun] 1) камень; 2) стоун (единица измерения веса = 6.3 кг); 3) кос- | |
| точка | |
| stove [stəuv] плита | |
| stretch [stretf] простираться, тянуться | |
| to stretch as far as простираться до | |
| to stretch far далеко простираться | |
| to stretch for miles простираться на многие километры (мили) | |

structure ['strakt[ə] структура strum* [strлm] бренчать, тренькать style [stail] стиль such [snt] такой sunflower ['sʌnˌflauə] подсолнух **support** [sə'pɔ:t] 1) n поддержка; 2) v поддерживать 280 sure [(э:] надёжный, надёжно surround [səˈraund] окружать surroundings [səˈraundɪŋz] (pl) окрестности survive [sə'vaiv] выживать swallow ['swoləu] 1) n ласточка; 2) v глотать swan [swpn] лебедь sweet [swi:t] сладкий symphony ['simfəni] симфония T tag question [ˈtæg ˌkwest[ən] разделительный вопрос talk [tɔ:k] беседа, разговор a small talk* светская беседа talkie [ˈtɔ:ki] звуковой фильм tap [tæp] водопроводный кран taste [teist] 1) n вкус; 2) v пробовать Tastes differ. О вкусах не спорят. team [ti:m] команда

stroke [strəuk] удар

to stretch east (north) простираться на восток (север)

technology [tek'npləфi] 1) техника; 2) технология teenager* ['ti:neiфə] подросток (тинейджер) territory ['terətri] территория themselves [ðəm'selvz] они сами theory ['діәгі] теория thistle ['діәгі] теория thistle ['дів] чертополох thrill [дів] дрожь, трепет, восхищение thrilling ['дів] приводящий в трепет, восхищение thriller ['дів] остросюжетный фильм, триллер ticket ['tikit] билет

a cinema ticket билет в кино

a lottery ticket лотерейный билет a plane ticket билет на самолёт a train ticket билет на поезд a ticket for a performance билет на представление a ticket to a place билет куда-л. tiger ['taigə] тигр

many times много раз
the first time в первый раз
toxic ['tɒksɪk] токсичный
tragedy ['træʤədi] трагедия
tremble ['trembl] дрожать
trouble* ['trʌbl] беда, неприятность

tuneful [ˈtju:nfl] мелодичный

violet [ˈvaɪələt] фиалка

several times несколько раз

time [taɪm] 1) время; 2) раз

a tiger lily ['taigə ˌlili] тигровая лилия

to be in trouble попасть в беду
truck (AmE) [trʌk] грузовик
true [tru:] правдивый
a true friend настоящий друг
truly ['tru:li] действительно
truth [tru:θ] правда
tundra ['tʌndrə] тундра

tyrannosaurus* [tɪˌrænəˈsɔ:rəs] тираннозавр (вид динозавров)

U

unfortunately [ʌnˈfɔːtʃ(ə)nətli] к несчастью unpolluted [ʌnpəˈluːtɪd] незагрязнённый unwashed [ʌnˈwɒʃt] невымытый useless [ˈjuːsləs] бесполезный

V valley [¹væli] долина

virus* ['vaɪərəs] вирус vocabulary [vəˈkæbjʊləri] 1) словарный состав языка; 2) словарный запас voice [vɔɪs] 1) голос; 2) залог volcano [vɒlˈkeɪnəʊ] вулкан

W

wait [weit] ждать to wait for sb/sth ждать кого-л./что-л. a war [wo:] война

wagon [ˈwægən] повозка, телега

warlike [ˈwɔ:laɪk] воинственный washing machine [ˈwʊʃɪŋ məˌʃi:n] стиральная машина

water ['wɔ:tə] вода a water lily ['wɔ:tə ˌlɪli] водяная лилия a waterfall ['wɔ:təfɔ:l] водопад a water polo ['wɔ:tə ˌpəuləu] водное поло water skiing ['wɔ:tə ˌski:ɪŋ] катание на водных лыжах way [wei] 1) путь; 2) метод, способ wealth [welθ] богатство, благосостояние 282 weigh [wei] взвешивать, весить weight [weit] Bec weightlifting ['weit,liftin] поднятие тяжестей whale* [weil] кит whistle* ['wisl] свисток width [widθ] ширина wild [waild] дикий wine* [wain] вино wink* [wink] моргать, мигать wisdom ['wizdəm] мудрость without [wið aut] без wolf [wulf] волк wonder ['wʌndə] интересоваться no wonder неудивительно wood [wud] дерево woodpecker ['wod.pekə] дятел wool [wul] шерсть work out ['w3:k aut] 1) тренироваться; 2) вырабатывать yard* [ja:d] ярд (единица измерения длины = 91,44 см) yet [jet] ещё yourself [jɔ:ˈself] ты сам yourselves [jo:ˈselvz] вы сами, себя

waste [weist] отходы

 \mathbf{z}

zebra [ˈzi:brə] зебра

Таблица чаправильных глаголов

| неправил | іьных глаг | олов | |
|--------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| be [bi:] | was/were [wdz]/[w3:] | been [bi:n] | быть |
| become [bɪˈkʌm] | became [bɪˈkeɪm] | become [bɪˈkʌm] | становиться, являться |
| begin [bɪˈgɪn] | began [bɪˈgæn] | begun [bɪˈgʌn] | начинать |
| blow [bləʊ] | blew [blu:] | blown [bleon] | дуть |
| break [breɪk] | broke [brəuk] | broken [brəʊkən] | ломать |
| bring [brɪŋ] | brought [brɔ:t] | brought [bro:t] | приносить |
| build [bɪld] | built [bɪlt] | built [bɪlt] | строить |
| burn [bɜ:n] | burnt [b3:nt] | burnt [b3:nt] | жечь, гореть |
| buy [baɪ] | bought [bɔ:t] | bought [bɔ:t] | покупать |
| can [kæn] | could [kvd] | | мочь |
| catch [kætʃ] | caught [kɔ:t] | caught [kɔ:t] | схватить |
| choose [tʃu:z] | chose [tʃəʊz] | chosen [ˈtʃəʊzən] | выбирать |
| come [kʌm] | came [keɪm] | come [kʌm] | приходить |
| cut [kʌt] | cut [kʌt] | cut [kʌt] | резать |
| do [du:] | did [dɪd] | done [dʌn] | делать |
| draw [drɔ:] | drew [dru:] | drawn [drɔ:n] | рисовать |
| dream [dri:m] | dreamed/dreamt [dremt] | dreamed/ dreamt [dremt] | мечтать |
| drink [driŋk] | drank [dræŋk] | drunk [drʌŋk] | пить |
| drive [draɪv] | drove [drəuv] | driven [ˈdrɪvən] | водить (машину и т. п.) |
| eat [i:t] | ate [et] | eaten [ˈi:tn] | есть |
| fall [fɔ:l] | fell [fel] | fallen [ˈfɔ:lən] | падать |
| fight [faɪt] | fought [fɔ:t] | fought [fɔ:t] | драться, сра- жаться |
| find [faɪnd] | found [faund] | found [faund] | находить |

Продолжение таблицы fly [flai] flew [flu:] flown [fləun] летать

| fly[flaɪ] | flew[flu:] | flown [fləun] | летать |
|-----------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| forget [fəˈget] | forgot [fəˈgɒt] | forgotten [fəˈgɒtn] | забывать |
| get [get] | got [gpt] | got [gpt] | получать |
| give [gɪv] | gave [geɪv] | given [ˈgɪvən] | давать |
| go [gəʊ] | went [went] | gone [gpn] | идти, направ- ляться |
| grow [grəʊ] | grew [gru:] | grown [grəun] | pacmu |
| hang [hæŋ] | hung [hʌŋ] | hung [hʌŋ] | вешать |
| have [hæv] | had [hæd] | had [hæd] | иметь |
| hear [hɪə] | heard [h3:d] | heard [h3:d] | слышать |
| keep [ki:p] | kept [kept] | kept [kept] | держать, содер- жать |
| know [nəʊ] | knew [nju:] | known [nəʊn] | знать |
| learn [lɜ:n] | learned/learnt [ls:nt] | learned/learnt [l3:nt] | учить |
| leave [li:v] | left [left] | left [left] | уезжать, поки- дать, оставлять |
| let [let] | let [let] | let [let] | позволять, давать |
| lie [laɪ] | lay [leɪ] | lain [leɪn] | лежать |
| lose [lu:z] | lost [lɒst] | lost [lɒst] | терять |
| make [meɪk] | made [meɪd] | made [meɪd] | делать, изготов- лять |
| mean [mi:n] | meant [ment] | meant [ment] | значить, иметь в виду |
| meet [mi:t] | met [met] | met [met] | встречать |
| put [put] | put [put] | put [put] | класть |
| read [ri:d] | read [red] | read [red] | читать |
| ride [raɪd] | rode [rəud] | ridden [rīdn] | ездить (верхом на лошади, на велосипеде) |

Окончание таблииы ring [rin] rang [ræn] rung [ran] звонить run [rʌn] ran [ræn] run [rʌn] бегать say [sei] said [sed] said [sed] сказать видеть see [si:] saw [so:] seen [si:n] 285 send [send] sent[sent] sent[sent] посылать spoken speak [spi:k] spoke [spauk] говорить ['spaukan] spelt [spelt] spell [spel] spelt [spelt] произносить по биквам spend [spend] spent [spent] spent [spent] тратить (деньги); проводить (время) stand[stænd] stood [stud] stood [stud] стоять strike [straik] struck [strnk] struck [strnk] ударять, бить (o vacax) swim [swim] swam [swæm] swum [swam] плавать take [teik] took [tuk] taken ['teikən] брать

teach [ti:tf] taught [to:t] taught [to:t] учить, обучать tell [tel] told [təuld] told [təuld] сказать, рассказать think [Omk] thought [θɔ:t] thought [θo:t] думать understand understood understood понимать [Andəˈstænd] [Andə'stud] [Andəˈstud] wear [weə] wore [wo:] worn [wo:n] носить, быть одетым

won [wan]

written ['rɪtn]

выигрывать

писать

win [win]

write [rait]

won [wan]

wrote [rəut]

Таблица перевода некоторых англо-американских единиц измерения в метрическую систему

Меры длины 286

1 дюйм (inch) = 2.54 см 1 dyr (foot) = 30.48 cm

Меры веса

1 унция (oz) = 28.35 г 1 фунт (pound) = $373.2 \, \text{г}$

Меры объёма 1 галлон (gallon) = $\left\{ egin{align*} 4,546\ \pi\ (Bеликобритания) \ 3,785\ \pi\ (CIIIA) \end{array}
ight.$

1 пинта (pint) = $egin{cases} 0,57\ \pi\ (Великобритания) \ 0,47\ \pi\ (CIIIA) \end{cases}$

Содержание

| Содержание | |
|--|-----|
| | |
| Unit 1. Visiting the USA | |
| Step One | |
| Step Two | 287 |
| Step Three | 20/ |
| Step Four | |
| Step Five | |
| Unit 2. English — a Global Language | |
| Step One | |
| Step Two 58 | |
| Step Three 66 | |
| Step Four | |
| Step Five 82 | |
| Unit 3. Living Things Around Us | |
| Step One | |
| Step Two 100 | |
| Step Three 107 | |
| Step Four | |
| Step Five | |
| Unit 4. The ABC of Ecology | |
| Step One | |
| Step Two 140 | |
| Step Three | |
| Step Four | |
| Step Five | |
| Unit 5. Keeping Fit | |
| Step One | |
| Step Two 177 | |
| Step Three | |
| Step Four | |
| Step Five | |

| | Unit 6. Our Favourite Pastimes |
|------|-------------------------------------|
| | Step One |
| | Step Two 225 |
| | Step Three |
| | Step Four |
| | Step Five |
| 28 | 8 |
| | Вопросы для самооценки |
| | Англо-русский словарь |
| Unit | Таблица неправильных глаголов |
| | Таблица перевода некоторых |
| | англо-американских единиц измерения |
| | в метрическую систему |